



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600096244V





600096244V



New and Revised Edition. 8vo.

**ARNOLD'S PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.**

By **GEORGE G. BRADLEY, M.A.**, Master of University College,
Oxford, and late Head-Master of Marlborough College.

Fourth Edition, Revised. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN LATIN
ELEGIAC VERSE.**

By **C. G. GEPP, M.A.**, Head-Master of King Edward VI. School,
Stratford-upon-Avon, late Junior Student of Christ Church,
Oxford.

*Keys to the above works, and also to the REVISED EDITION of
ARNOLD'S HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK, by C. G. GEPP, for
the use of Tutors only, may be had by written application to the
Publishers.*

RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

HENRY'S
FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY THE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

LATE RECTOR OF LYNDON, AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY
COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE

NEW EDITION, EDITED AND REVISED BY

C. G. GEPP, M.A.

HEAD-MASTER OF KING EDWARD VI. SCHOOL, STRATFORD-UPON-AVON; LATE
JUNIOR STUDENT OF CHRIST CHURCH, OXFORD

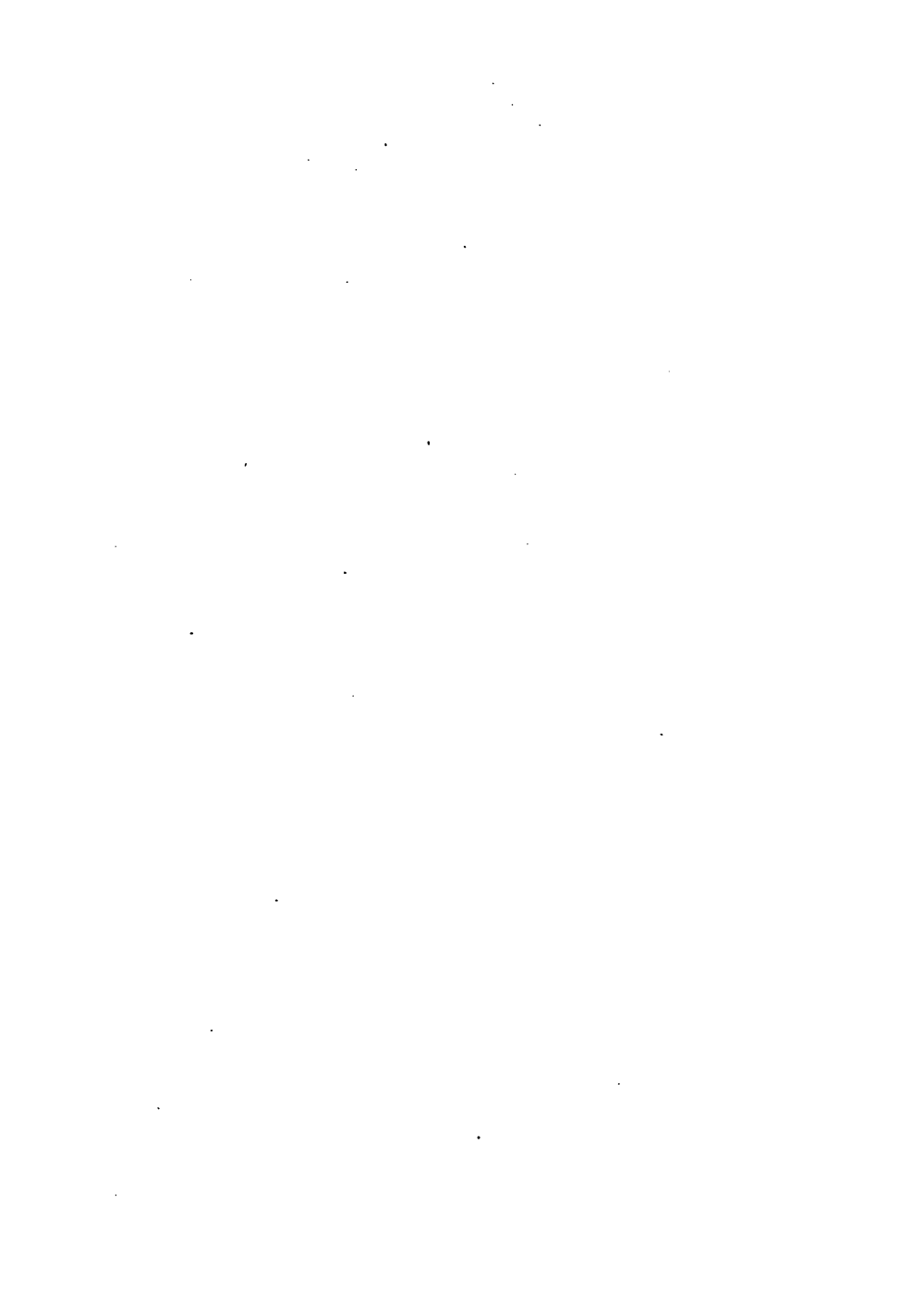


RIVINGTONS

London, Oxford, and Cambridge

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, & CO., LONDON

MDCCCLXXVIII



PREFACE.

WHATEVER may be thought of this work as compared with previous editions, the Editor ventures to claim for it the merit of greater simplicity of arrangement. The footnotes, which have been reserved mainly for explanations of technical words, are fewer, and less crowded with matter ; the familiar finger-posts exist no longer ; the subtle distinction between numerals above the line with a curve and those without a curve has been abandoned ; while a glance at the Table of Contents will show that a definite plan has been followed in the order of the Exercises, the object being to keep in view the stem-formation of words.

The principal novelties in the present edition are the following :—References have been made throughout to the "*Public School Latin Primer*," the phraseology of which is generally adopted ; the formation of words from the Stem is taught from the first ; the constructions of the Cases and of the Verb-Noun are fully treated ; the Exercises have been almost entirely re-written, and are longer ; anecdotes, fables, etc., have been inserted into the passages for transla-

tion into English ; some fifty test Exercises have been added ; and, lastly, a General Index has been carefully compiled, by which the search for particular rules or constructions will be greatly facilitated.

The Editor gratefully acknowledges his obligations to the Latin Grammars of Allen, Kennedy, Madvig, Roby, and Zumpt, and also to the careful revision of the proof-sheets by the Rev. John Raven, M.A., Head Master of Beccles Grammar School.

KING EDWARD VI. GRAMMAR SCHOOL,
STRATFORD-UPON-AVON,
October, 1878.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
1. Cases in Latin and English,	1
2. On forming the Accusative Case,	4
3. On the Gender of Substantives,	5
4. The Genitive and Dative Singular,	8
5. The Ablative Singular,	11
6. The Plural Number,	12
7. On forming Three Tenses in First Conjugation,	14
8. Accusative with Transitive Verb,	17
9. On forming Three Tenses in Second Conjugation,	20
10. On forming Three Tenses in Third Conjugation,	21
11. On forming Three Tenses in Fourth Conjugation,	22
12. Supplementary to the foregoing Exercises,	24
13. The Passive Voice (A-verbs and E-verbs),	27
14. The Passive Voice continued (Consonant and U-verbs, I-verbs),	30
15. On forming the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active. (Adjectives in -x, -ns, -rs),	32
16. The Comparative and Superlative of Adjectives. (<i>Acer</i> , <i>Unus</i>),	36
17. The Infinitive,	39
18. The Infinitive continued. <i>Sum, Possum, Volo</i> . (The Prolative Infinitive),	42
19. The Infinitive continued. Gerunds. (<i>Personal and</i> <i>Demonstrative Pronouns</i>),	46
20. The Gerundive. Gerundive Attraction. (<i>Dative of the</i> <i>Agent</i>),	50
21. The Supines. <i>Eo</i> . (<i>Nē — quidem</i>),	54
22. The Participles. Periphrastic Conjugation,	57
23. The Perfect and Pluperfect Passive. Deponents,	60
24. The Accusative and Infinitive,	64

LESSON	PAGE
25. The Relative Pronoun. Copulative Verbs,	66
26. The Reflexive Pronouns. <i>Ipse. Idem,</i>	69
27. The Subjunctive. Ut and Nē expressing Purpose. (<i>Consecution of Tenses</i>),	72
28. The Subjunctive continued. Ut expressing a Conse- quence. (<i>Quis, quæ, quid</i>),	77
29. The Imperative. Nē in Prohibitions,	80
30. The Indefinite Pronoun Quis — Cum (Quum). (<i>Interro- gative Sentences</i>),	83
31. Impersonal Verbs,	86
32. Apposition. <i>Summus, Imus,</i> etc. (Conditional Sen- tences),	87
33. The Accusative. Place. Space. Time. Double Ac- cusative. Prepositions,	90
34. The Genitive (<i>Subjective Genitive</i>),	93
35. The Genitive continued (<i>Objective Genitive</i>). <i>Miseret,</i> <i>pœnitet,</i> etc.,	96
36. The Dative,	99
37. The Dative continued. Impersonal Construction, . .	102
38. The Ablative. Quasi-Passive Verbs,	104
39. The Ablative continued. <i>Time, Price,</i>	107
40. The Ablative continued. <i>Place.</i> (The Locative), . .	109
41. The Ablative Absolute,	112
42. Ablative of the thing compared. <i>Quam</i> in Comparison, .	115
43. Ablative denoting Amount of Difference. (<i>Tanto — quanto; eo — quo</i>),	118
44. Translation of ' <i>May</i> ,' ' <i>Might</i> ,' ' <i>Ought</i> ,'	120
45. Ut, Nē, with Verbs of Fearing,	122
46. Quin. Quominus,	123
47. Interrogatives. Direct Questions,	126
48. Indirect Questions,	128
49. Double Questions,	129
50. Some Conjunctions always found with the Subjunctive, .	131
51. Qui with the Subjunctive,	132
52. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs,	134
53. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs,	136

Contents.

ix

LESSON	PAGE
54. Various uses of Qui,	138
55. <i>Either</i> — <i>or</i> . <i>Whether</i> — <i>or</i> ,	140
56-63. Participial Constructions,	141
64. Conjunctions,	148
 Memorabilia,	 149
Supplementary Exercises (65-112),	151
Differences of Idiom,	166
Table of Synonymes,	169
Questions on Syntax,	172
Appendix,	175
Vocabulary I., English-Latin,	193
Vocabulary II., Latin-English,	213
General Index,	232

REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

1. The mark \bar placed over a vowel shows that the vowel is *long*.
The mark \breve placed over a vowel shows that the vowel is *short*.
2. A vowel before another vowel in the same word is short.
3. Final E, or ES, forms a *separate syllable*. Thus, mār-ĕ, *the sea*; mīl-ēs, *a soldier*. Not like our English words 'mare,' fem. of *horse*; 'miles,' measures of distance.
4. The following Table shows the approximate sounds in Latin and English:—

(a) Vowels.

Latin ā like English *a* in *father*.

„	ă	„	„	<i>a</i> in <i>away</i> .
„	ē	„	„	<i>a</i> in <i>game</i> .
„	ĕ	„	„	<i>e</i> in <i>get</i> .
„	ī	„	„	<i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> .
„	ĭ	„	„	<i>i</i> in <i>pity</i> .
„	ō	„	„	<i>o</i> in <i>home</i> .
„	ŏ	„	„	<i>o</i> in <i>body</i> .
„	ū	„	„	<i>u</i> in <i>rule</i> .
„	ŭ	„	„	<i>u</i> in <i>sudden</i> .

(β) Diphthongs.

Latin æ like English *ai* in *aisle*.

„	au	„	„	<i>ow</i> in <i>power</i> , or <i>ou</i> in <i>house</i> .
„	œ	„	„	<i>oi</i> in <i>join</i> .

(γ) Consonants.

Latin c		like English c	in cat.
„ ch	„	„	<i>ch</i> in <i>catechism</i> .
„ g ¹	„	„	<i>g</i> in <i>get</i> .
„ j	„	„	<i>y</i> in <i>yard</i> .
„ q ^{always} followed by u	} „	„	<i>qu</i> in <i>queen</i> .
„ s ²	„	„	<i>s</i> in <i>sit</i> .
„ t	„	„	<i>t</i> in <i>cat</i> , <i>native</i> .

¹ g followed by u (as in *sanguis*) is pronounced like *gw*. So q followed by u (as in *quartus*) is pronounced like *kw*.

² Latin s between two vowels, as *rosa*, is sometimes like the English *s* in *rose*.

HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK.

[REVISED EDITION BY C. G. GEPP.]

1. The Vocabularies at the head of each Exercise are arranged in *Alphabetical Order*, and are intended to be learnt by heart.
2. English words enclosed in brackets () in an Exercise are to be omitted in the Latin.
3. The Capital Letters *L. P.* stand for the "*Public School Latin Primer*," to which reference is made throughout.
4. Phrases in Italics (as, *much good*) should be looked for in the Table of Differences of Idiom, to which the numerals *above the line* refer.
5. Single words in Italics are emphatic, or need special notice.

LESSON 1.

Cases in Latin and English.

1. THE meaning of a Noun Substantive in Latin varies with its ending: as 'mensA,' *a table*; mensÆ, *of a table*; and so on.

2. The change which a Noun undergoes for the purpose of varying its meaning is called **Flexion** or **Inflection**. (*L. P.* § 11 (1).)

3. A word so altered is called a *Case* of a Noun. Thus mensÆ is called the *genitive case* of 'mensa;' and so on.

4. There are six (so-called) cases in Latin,—the Nominative, the Vocative, the Accusative, the Genitive, the Dative, and the Ablative.

5. The Nominative (which is not strictly a *case*), is the *unaltered form*, and is sometimes called the *Direct Case*. The others, except the Vocative, are called the *Oblique Cases*.

6. The English Language was anciently much more inflected than it is now. In *Modern* English the use of *case-endings*, or Inflection, has been to a great extent replaced by the use of Prepositions (derived from *præ-pono*, 'I place before').

In English there are now only *three* cases, the Nominative, the Objective, and the Possessive. In Nouns the Nom. and Obj. cases are alike. In some of the Pronouns all three cases are different, *e.g.*:

Nom. and	} <i>Father, John.</i>	Nom. <i>Who.</i>
Obj.		Obj. <i>Whom.</i>
Poss.		Poss. <i>Whose.</i>
	<i>Father's, John's.</i>	

7. From these observations it will easily be seen that the Latin Language is able, by means of case-endings, to express variations of meaning which in English can be expressed only by the aid of Prepositions. Thus,

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom.	DigitUS, a finger.	DigitI, fingers.	
Voc.	DigitE, O finger.	DigitI, O fingers.	
Acc.	DigitUM, a finger.	DigitOS, fingers.	
Gen.	DigitI, OF a finger.	DigitORUM, OF fingers.	
Dat.	DigitO, TO or FOR a finger.	DigitIS, TO or FOR fingers.	
Abl.	DigitO, BY or WITH a finger.	DigitIS, BY or WITH fingers.	

There is no Article (*a, an, the*) in Latin. Thus 'digitus' may mean either *a* finger, or *the* finger: 'cura' may mean *care*, *a* care, or *the* care.

8. The part of a word which remains when the Inflections are removed is called the **Stem**.* The Stem of a Noun, therefore, is that part on which the Flexional changes (2) are based. (*L. P.* § 11, *a.*)

The *last letter* of the Stem is called the *Character*. It is shown in this book by a Capital letter; as, mensARum, lapiDum.

* Called in some Grammars the '*Crude Form*.'

9. There are five different kinds of Inflection of Substantives in Latin, which are called the *Five Declensions*.

10. The Five Declensions of Substantives are distinguished by the endings of their Genitive cases. Thus,

1st Decl.	2nd Decl.	3rd Decl.	4th Decl.	5th Decl.
Gen. Sing. -æ	i-	-īs	-ūs	-ēī
Gen. Pl. -ārum	-ōrum	-um, or -īum *	-ūum	-ērum

11. All Declensions have the following points in common:—

The Nominative and Vocative are alike; except in *Singular Nouns* of the second Declension, ending in *-us*.

The Dative and Ablative Plural are alike.

12. There are three Genders—the Masculine, the Feminine, and the Neuter.

In *Neuter Nouns*, the Nom., Voc., and Acc. are alike; and these cases in the Plural always end in *-ā*.

13. Table of the Declensions.

		Gen. Sing.	Gen. Pl.
Nouns of 1st Decl. have Nom. ending -a		-æ	-ārum
Nouns of 2nd Decl.	„ „ { -us } { -er } { -um }	-i	-ōrum
Nouns of 3rd Decl.	„ „ { -e, x, a, l, t } { -s, c, o, r, n }	-īs	-um, or -īum *
Nouns of 4th Decl.	„ „ { -us } { -u }	-ūs	-ūum
Nouns of 5th Decl.	„ „ -es	-ēī	-ērum

* The Gen. Pl. of most *Imparissyllabic* nouns ends in *-um*. *Parissyllabic* nouns have for the most part Gen. Pl. in *-ium*. For exceptions, see Appendix, V. *Parissyllabic* nouns are those which have the same number of syllables in the Oblique cases as in the Nominative. *Imparissyllabic* nouns are those which have more syllables in the Oblique cases than in the Nominative.

LESSON 2.

On Forming the Accusative Case.

14. The following are the *Accusative endings* of the five Declensions in the Singular Number:—

I.	II. IV.	III. V.
-am	-um	-em

15. To form the Accusative Singular in the *first*, *second*, *fourth*, and *fifth* declensions, add the *ending* to the Stem of the Noun, *without the Character* (8).

In the *third* declension, add the ending to the **Stem**; *except in the case of I-nouns*, when the ending must be added to the Stem without the Character.

I-nouns are nouns whose stems end in *i* (*L. P.* § 20).

16. The Stem is found by throwing away **-rum** from the Genitive Plural in the first, second, and fifth declensions; and by throwing away **-um** from the Genitive Plural in the third and fourth declensions. (*L. P.* § 11, *d.*)

EXERCISE 1.

(Refer to 10, 12, and 13.)

17. Name the Declension, and write down the Accusative Singular of each word in the Vocabulary.

Vocabulary 1.

<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen. Plural.</i>
ædes,	<i>temple,</i>	ædIum.
amnis,	<i>river,</i>	amniIum.
animus,	<i>mind,</i>	animOrum.
aquila,	<i>eagle,</i>	aquilArum.
ars,	<i>art,</i>	artiIum.
arundo,	<i>reed,</i>	arundiNum.

Vocabulary 1—continued.

<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen. Plural.</i>
astrum,	constellation,	astrOrum.
avis,	bird,	avIum.
dies,	day,	diErum.
ensis,	sword,	ensIum.
fluctus,	wave,	fluctUum.
fluvius,	river,	fluviOrum.
folium,	leaf,	foliOrum.
gener,	son-in-law,	generOrum.
incus,	anvil,	incūDum.
liber,	book,	librOrum.
miles,	soldier,	miliTum.
res,	thing,	rErum.
rupes,	rock,	ruplum.

LESSON 3.

On the Gender of Substantives.(Adjectives in *-us*, *-er*.)

18. Every Noun Substantive is Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter (12).

19. The Gender of Substantives is determined (*a*) by their Form, or (*b*) by their Meaning. (*L. P.* § 26.)

20. GENERAL RULES. (For exceptions see Appendix, X.)

- (1) **Masculine.** All names of males, months, mountains, peoples, rivers, and winds.
- (2) **Feminine.** Females, islands, and most names of cities, countries, towns, and trees.
- (3) **Neuter.** All indeclinable nouns, and the Verb-noun Infinitive.

When a noun can be both masculine and feminine, it is called **Common**. Such are names denoting an occupation or quality belonging to either a man or a woman; e.g. *parens*, a parent; *conjug*, a husband, or wife.

21. Table of Genders. General Rules.

1st Decl.	{ Fem. (except a few names and designations of men.)
2nd Decl.	{ Masc. -us, -er, Neut. -um.
3rd Decl.	{ Masc. -o (when not -do, -go, -xo). -er, -or, -os. -es, increasing in the genitive. Fem. -do, -go, -io. -as, -aus, -is. -es, not increasing in the genitive. -s, after a consonant. -x. Neut. -l, a, n, c, e, t, -ar, -ur, -us.
4th Decl.	{ Masc. -us. Neut. -u.
5th Decl.	{ Fem. (<i>Dies</i> is Common in Sing., Masc. in Plur.)

22. Adjectives ending in *-us*, *-er*, have a Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter Form. In the Masculine and Neuter they follow the *Second Declension*, and in the Feminine they follow the *First*. (*L. P.* § 32, and Appendix, XI.)

The Masc. ends in *-us*, or *-er*, like *dominus*, *puer*, or *magister*.

The Fem. ends in *-a*, like *mensa*.

The Neut. „ -um, like *bellum*.

23. As Adjectives have Inflexions to mark the differences of gender, number, and case, so every Adjective must be of the *same gender, number, and case* as the Substantive to which it refers.

The same rule applies to Participles and Pronouns.

24. Adjectives, etc., so inflected are said to be in *Agreement* with their Substantives.

The Adjective *generally* follows its Substantive.

Obs. When there are several Substantives of the *same* gender, the Adjective takes that gender, and is, of course, put in the Plural number. But when the Substantives are of *different* gender, and *living beings*, the *Masculine Plural* is generally used.

EXERCISE 2.

(Refer to 13, 15, 20, and 21.)

25. Write down the Accusative Singular of the following Substantives and Adjectives in *Agreement*.

Vocabulary 2.

SUBSTANTIVES.		Gen. Plural.	ADJECTIVES.	
amnis,	river,	amniUm.	rapīdus,	rapid.
auctor,	author,	auctōRum.	clarus,	illustrious.
caper,	he-goat,	caprOrum.	barbātus,	bearded.
classis,	fleet,	classiUm.	magnus,	great.
lilium,	lily,	liliOrum.	albus,	white.
magister,	master,	magistrOrum.	tuus,	thy, your.
mare,	sea,	marium.	asper,	rough.
mons,	mountain,	montium.	altus,	lofty.
nubes,	cloud,	nubium.	densus,	thick.
puer,	boy,	puerOrum.	carus,	dear.
quercus,	oak-tree,	quercUum.	durus,	hard.
res,	thing,	rErum.	ineptus,	silly.
rosa,	rose,	rosArum.	ruber* (rubr-),	red.
urbs,	city,	urbium.	pulcer* (pulcr-),	beautiful.
ventus,	wind,	ventOrum.	secundus,	favourable.
via,	road,	viArum.	longus,	long.
vir,	man,	virOrum.	bonus,	good.
vox,	voice,	voCum.	acūtus,	shrill.
vultus,	countenance,	vultUum.	lētus,	joyful.

* Like *magister* (*L. P.* § 32, and Appendix, XI).

EXERCISE 3.

(Refer to 7, 13, 20, 21.)

26.

Vocabulary 3.

SUBSTANTIVES.		Gen. Plural.	ADJECTIVES.	
<i>avenger,</i>	ultor,	ultōRum.	<i>balmy,</i>	odōrus.
<i>bed,</i>	cubile,	cubillūm.	<i>bright,</i>	clarus.
<i>bee,</i>	apis,	apīum.	<i>broad,</i>	latus.
<i>breeze,</i>	aura,	aurārum.	<i>busy,</i>	sedūlus.
<i>chariot,</i>	currus,	currūm.	<i>cruel,</i>	asper.
<i>eye,</i>	ocūlus,	oculōrum.	<i>cunning,</i>	vafer * (vafr-).
<i>father,</i>	pater,	patrūm.	<i>deep,</i>	profundus.
<i>fox,</i>	vulpes,	vulplūm.	<i>flowery,</i>	floreus.
<i>hawk,</i>	accipiter,	accipitrūm.	<i>good,</i>	bonus.
<i>judge,</i>	judex,	judicūm.	<i>iron,</i>	ferreus.
<i>knife,</i>	culter,	cultrōrum.	<i>just,</i>	justus.
<i>letter,</i>	epistōla,	epistolārum.	<i>long,</i>	longus.
<i>lion,</i>	leo,	leōnum.	<i>piercing,</i>	acūtus.
<i>meadow,</i>	pratūm,	pratōrum.	<i>rapid,</i>	rapidus.
<i>plain,</i>	campus,	campōrum.	<i>severe,</i>	sevērus.
<i>root,</i>	radix,	radicūm.	<i>sick,</i>	æger * (ægr-).
<i>sheep,</i>	ovis,	ovīum.	<i>small,</i>	parvus.
<i>spear-point,</i>	cuspis,	cuspidūm.	<i>timid,</i>	timidus.

27. Give the Latin for—a severe avenger; the small bed; the busy bee (*acc.*); a balmy breeze; a rapid chariot (*acc.*); a piercing eye; the good father (*acc.*); a cunning fox; the cruel hawk (*acc.*); a just judge (*acc.*); a long letter; an iron knife (*acc.*); a sick lion (*acc.*); a flowery meadow; the broad plain; a deep root (*acc.*); the timid sheep; an iron spear-point (*acc.*); a bright eye (*acc.*).

LESSON 4.

The Genitive and Dative Singular.

28. The following are the *Genitive* and *Dative endings* of the five declensions in the Singular Number.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen.	-æ	-i	-īs	-ūs	-ēi
Dat.	-æ	-o	-i	-īi	-ēi

* Like *magister* (L. P. § 32, and Appendix, XI).

29. To form the Genitive and Dative Singular in the *first, second, fourth, and fifth* declensions, add the *ending* to the *Stem* of the Noun, *without the Character* (8, and 16).

In the *third* declension, add the ending to the *Stem*; *except in the case of I-nouns*, when the ending must be added to the *Stem* without the Character (16).

30. In turning Latin into English, or English into Latin, we must remember that the *Latin Genitive* is commonly represented either by the preposition *of*, or by the possessive inflexion *s* with an apostrophe before it (thus 's).*

E.g., We say in English, either "My *father's* house," or "The house *of* my father."

31. The dependent Genitive *usually* stands first; *e.g.*, *Urbis* porta, the gate *of-the-city*.

An Adjective qualifying a Substantive with dependent Genitive stands first, the Genitive next, the Substantive last. Thus, *Vera animi magnitudo*, *true—of-mind—greatness*, *i.e.* true greatness of mind.

32. The English preposition *to*, which is the sign of the Dative, must not be confounded with *to* when it implies *motion to*. This latter must be translated by the Latin prepositions *ad*, or *in*, with the Accusative, and sometimes by the Accusative alone. *E.g.*, I gave the book *to* the boy (dative). I am going *to* the city (*ad* with acc.). I came *to Rome* (acc. alone).

* Other signs of the Genitive will be noticed hereafter.

EXERCISE 4.

(Refer to 7, 13, 21, and 24.)

33.

Vocabulary 4.

<i>course,</i>	<i>cursus,</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
<i>daughter,</i>	<i>filia,</i>	<i>cursUum.</i>
<i>farmer,</i>	<i>agricôla,</i>	<i>filiiArum.</i>
<i>fault,</i>	<i>vitium,</i>	<i>agricolArum.</i>
<i>friend,</i>	<i>amicus,</i>	<i>vitiOrum.</i>
<i>girl,</i>	<i>puella,</i>	<i>amicOrum.</i>
<i>grief, pain,</i>	<i>dolor,</i>	<i>puellArum.</i>
<i>law,</i>	<i>lex,</i>	<i>dolôRum.</i>
<i>leaf,</i>	<i>folium,</i>	<i>leGum.</i>
<i>love,</i>	<i>amor,</i>	<i>foliOrum.</i>
<i>mother,</i>	<i>mater,</i>	<i>amôRum.</i>
<i>my,</i>	<i>meus, a, um.</i>	<i>matRum.</i>
<i>nest,</i>	<i>nidus,</i>	<i>nidOrum.</i>
<i>net,</i>	<i>rete,</i>	<i>retIum.</i>
<i>our,</i>	<i>noster, nostra, nostrum.</i>	
<i>river,</i>	<i>flumen,</i>	<i>flumîNum.</i>
<i>sick,</i>	<i>æger, ægra, ægrum.</i>	
<i>sister,</i>	<i>soror,</i>	<i>sorôRum.</i>
<i>slave,</i>	<i>servus,</i>	<i>servOrum.</i>
<i>son,</i>	<i>filius,</i>	<i>filiiOrum.</i>
<i>thy, your,*</i>	<i>tuus, tua, tuum.</i>	
<i>tooth,</i>	<i>dens,</i>	<i>dentIum.</i>
<i>wife,</i>	<i>conjux,</i>	<i>conjûGum.</i>
<i>wisdom,</i>	<i>sapientia,</i>	<i>Gen. Sing. sapientiæ.</i>
<i>your,</i>	<i>vester, vestra, vestrum.</i>	

[Order : Adj.—Gen.—Subst.]

34. The gate (*acc.*) of the city. To the sick slave's son. The eagle's nest (*acc.*). For the good girl. Wisdom's law (*acc.*). My father's mother (*acc.*). For the farmer's wife. For a fault. To the cunning fox. Of a net. Our sister's love. A lion's tooth (*acc.*). For a dear wife. The leaf of a lily. To a bearded he-goat. To our friend. Of great grief. The river's course. To the gate of the city (32). Of a dear head. Of our battle-array.

* *Tuus* is used when one person is addressed; *vester* when more than one is addressed.

Exercise 4—continued.

Amici mei filio. Filiæ tuæ. Magno conjugis dolori.
 Rapido fluminis cursui. Rei ineptæ. Diei claro. Judici
 justo. Quercus duræ. Currus rapidi. Servi vestri.
 Urbi nostræ. Ad urbem nostram. Ægræ judicis filiæ.

LESSON 5.

The Ablative Singular.

35. The following are the *Ablative endings* of the five declensions in the Singular Number.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-ā	-ō	-ē(-i)	-ū	-ē

Nouns which make Acc. in *-im*, and neuter nouns ending in *e*, *al*, *ar*, have Ablative in *-i*. For list of nouns and exceptions, see Appendix, IV.

The Ablative is formed in each declension by adding the *endings* according to the rule given in 15, 16, and 29.

36. The *most common* signs of the Latin Ablative case are *by*, *with*, *from*. There are, however, many other signs, *e.g.*, *at*, *in*, *for*, *of*, *than*, *upon*, which will be noticed hereafter.

37. The following Prepositions, governing the Ablative, are used with Substantives which signify *persons* or *living beings*; viz., *a* (or *ab* before a vowel), meaning *by*; *cum*, meaning *with* (=together with); and *a* (*ab*), *e* (or *ex* before a vowel), meaning *from* (Appendix, XXIII, B).

'*By*' is the proper sign of the Ablative of the *Agent* * or '*doer*,' whether a *person* or a *living being*. The Agent is never put in the Ablative *without* the Prep. *a* or *ab*.

'*With*' is the proper sign of the Ablative of the *Instrument*, or '*thing by means of which*' anything is done. The Ablative of the Instrument is put *without* a Preposition.

* Derived from *ago*, 'I do.'

EXERCISE 5.

38.

Vocabulary 5.

		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
<i>brother,</i>	<i>frater,</i>	<i>fratRum.</i>
<i>exile,</i>	<i>exsul,</i>	<i>exsūLum.</i>
<i>labour,</i>	<i>labor,</i>	<i>labōRum.</i>
<i>leaf,</i>	<i>frons,</i>	<i>frondIum.</i>
<i>man,</i>	<i>homo,</i>	<i>homiNūm.</i>
<i>peacock,</i>	<i>pavo,</i>	<i>pavōNūm.</i>
<i>proud,</i>	<i>superbus, a, um.</i>	
<i>sad,</i>	<i>mæstus, a, um.</i>	

39. With my brother. By a sad exile. With great labour. With a leaf. With a proud man. By a peacock. From a dear friend. To a deep river. With a tooth. By the rapid river. By your master. With a lion. Out of the meadow. With a thick cloud. By a favourable wind. By a cunning fox.

Ab auctore claro. Ex urbe pulcra. Cum viro bono. Voce acuta. Vultu læto. Re ineptā. Dolōre acuto. A iudice justo. Ab accipitre. A leone. Cum milite. Carmine. Arundīne. Ense acuto. Agmīne denso.

LESSON 6.

The Plural Number.

(Adjectives in *-is*.)

40. Plural endings of the five declensions:—

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom.	-æ	-ī (ī, <i>neut.</i>)	-ēs (-a, -īa, <i>neut.</i>)	-ūs	-ēs
Acc.	-ūs	-ōs (-ā, <i>neut.</i>)	-ēs (-a, -īa, <i>neut.</i>)	-ūs	-ēs
Dat. and	{	-īs	-ībus	{	-ēbus
Abl.					
				-ībus*	
				-ūbus	

* The following have mostly Dat., Abl. Plur. in *-ubus*, viz., words of two syllables ending in *-cus*, as *quercus*, with *artus* (pl.), *partus*, *portus*, *tribus*, and *veru*. (See Appendix, VI. Obs. 2).

41. These cases of the Plural are found by the rule given in 15, 16.

For the endings of the *Genitive* Plural see 10, and note.

42. Adjectives in *-is* are declined like *I-nouns* in the third declension.

1. The Masculine and Feminine ending in *-is*, the Neuter in *-ē*, are like *ignīs*, *mare*, and are similarly declined.

2. The ablative singular *always* ends in *-ī*.

Thus,

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	M. F.	N.		M. F.	N.
Nom. }	<i>tristis</i> ,	<i>triste</i> .	Nom. }	<i>tristes</i> .	<i>tristia</i> .
Voc. }			Voc. }		
Acc. }	<i>tristem</i> ,	<i>triste</i> .	Acc. }		
Gen. }	<i>tristis</i> .		Gen. }	<i>tristium</i> .	
Dat. }	<i>tristi</i> .		Dat. }	<i>tristibus</i> .	
Abl. }			Abl. }		

EXERCISE 6.

43.

Vocabulary 6.

		<i>Gen. Pl.</i>
<i>ancient</i> ,	<i>antiquus</i> , a, um.	
<i>army</i> ,	<i>exercitus</i> ,	<i>exercituum</i> .
<i>burden</i> ,	<i>onus</i> ,	<i>onērum</i> .
<i>garden</i> ,	<i>hortus</i> ,	<i>hortorum</i> .
<i>heavy</i> ,	<i>gravis</i> , e.	
<i>mild</i> ,	<i>mitis</i> , e.	
<i>slender</i> ,	<i>gracilis</i> , e.	

(See *Vocabularies* 2, 3, 4.)

44. (a) Decline in the Singular and Plural: a slender boy; a heavy burden; my garden; our army; a long road; a bright constellation; a rough sea; a sharp tooth.
- (b) Decline in the Plural only: a small bed; a just judge; a deep root; a foolish thing; a sick lion; a hard oak; a mild father.

Exercise 6—continued.

Cum patris tui filio. Flumina rapida. Fluminibus rapidis. Ex urbe nostra. Vultuum lætorum. Viris bonis. Classes magnas. A montibus altis. Ovium timidarum. Cuspide ferrea. Magistro miti. Magistris mitibus. A magistris mitibus. Puellarum gracilium. Cum exercitibus vestris. E nube densa. Vulnēra gravia. Judicis justī vultus. Sideribus claris. Vulnērum.

LESSON 7.

On Forming Three Tenses in First Conjugation.*

(A-verbs.)

45. The Latin Finite† Verb has six *Tenses*.‡ Each tense has two *Numbers* (singular and plural); and three *Persons* (first, second, and third) in each Number.

46. The Persons of the Latin Verb are distinguished by their *endings*. In English this distinction is limited to the Singular Number. Thus,

<i>Sing.</i> I go.		<i>Plur.</i> We	} go.
Thou go-est.		You	
He go-es, or go-eth.		They	

In Latin *all* the Persons have *different* endings; and the ending, in each instance, shows the Number and Person meant.

* From Latin *conjugatio*, a grouping together; properly denoting a number of Verbs belonging to the same class. It is now used to denote *Inflection*; and we talk of *conjugating* a verb, but of *declining* a substantive.

† *i.e.* limited by tense, mood, and person (Lat. *fini*, 'a limit').

‡ From Lat. *tempus*, 'time.' Tenses are those forms or inflections of the verb which express time.

47. The *Subject* is the person or thing spoken about. The Subject of a *Finite Verb* stands in the *Nominative* (*L. P.* § 87, 93). Thus, *puer*, the boy, *amat*, loves.

Here it is said of the boy that he loves : therefore *puer* is the *Subject* of the verb *amat*.

Obs. That which is said about the Subject is called the *Predicate*.

48. When no Nominative is expressed, one of the Personal Pronouns (*I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they*) must be taken as the Subject.

These Pronouns are generally left out in Latin, because they are *implied* in the *endings*. When they are used, it is for the sake of emphasis.

49. There are only *two Inflected* tenses in English.* The rest are formed by means of Auxiliary verbs (*does, did, shall,† will, have, etc.*).

In Latin these varieties of meaning are expressed in the endings of the several tenses. Thus, *amā-bo*, I *shall* love; *amā-bam*, I *was* loving, etc.

50. FIRST CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose *Present Stem* (8) ends in A.

Thus, *amA-re*, to love. Present Stem, *amA-*

From the Present Stem are formed the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-Simple*.

* Namely, the Present and the Past; as, *I love, I loved*.

† '*Shall*,' in the 1st person, simply *foretells*; in the 2nd and 3rd persons, it *commands*. '*Will*,' in the 1st person, declares the *speaker's intention*; in the other persons, it *foretells*.

51. The *endings* of the Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple in the 1st and 2nd Conjugations are as follows:—

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Present Tense, Sing.	-o	-s	-t.	Plur.	-mus	-tis	-nt.
Imperfect „ „	-bam	-bas	-bat.	„	-bāmus	-bātis	-bant.
Fut.-Simple „ „	-bo	-bis	-bit.	„	-bīmus	-bītis	-bunt.

These endings must be added to the Present Stem in each case to form the tense required.

Thus,

	Present Tense.	Imperfect Tense.
Sing. 1.	am-o, * <i>I love</i> , or <i>am loving</i> .	amA-bam, <i>I was loving</i> .
2.	amA-s, <i>thou† lovest</i> , or <i>art loving</i> .	amA-bus, <i>thou wast loving</i> .
3.	amA-t, <i>(he) loves</i> , or <i>is loving</i> .	amA-bat, <i>(he) was loving</i> .
Plur. 1.	amA-mus, <i>we love</i> , or <i>are loving</i> .	amA-bāmus, <i>we were loving</i> .
2.	amA-tis, <i>you† love</i> , or <i>are loving</i> .	amA-bātis, <i>you were loving</i> .
3.	amA-nt, <i>(they) love</i> , or <i>are loving</i> .	amA-bant, <i>(they) were loving</i> .

Similarly, amA-bo, *I shall* or *will love*.

EXERCISE 7.

52.

Vocabulary 7.

ask,	rogo,	rogA-re.
call,	voco,	vocA-re.
plough,	aro,	arA-re.
sing,	canto,	cantA-re.

When the 3rd Person is expressed by a Noun the Personal Pronouns (*he, she, it, they*) are omitted in English. Thus *puer amat*, 'the boy loves;' not, 'the boy *he* loves' (48).

* Am-o is contracted from amA-o = amo.

† The Plural form 'you' is now generally adopted, even when a single person is addressed. 'Thou' and 'ye' are used only in prayers or in poetry.

Exercise 7—continued.

53. We ask. You were calling. We will sing. He is ploughing. Thou wast asking. They are singing. He will ask. You will call. I was ploughing. They will ask.

Soror mea cantabat. Cantabo. Rogabis. Servus arabat. Miles cantat. Milites vocabunt. Sorores tuæ cantant. Cantatis. Rogabatis. Vocamus. Rogabimus. Sororis meæ filius cantabit.

LESSON 8.

Accusative with Transitive Verb.

(Order of words.)

54. Transitive* Verbs take an Accusative of the Object.†

The *Object* is that which is exposed to and affected by action.

55. A transitive verb is one which has no *complete* meaning of its own, but needs the name of a *person* or *thing* to which the action of the Verb is directed or communicated. Thus, I *strike*—the horse. You *love*—your father. He *reads*—the letter.

Verbs which have a complete meaning of their own, and therefore require no Object, are called *Intransitive* (not-passing-over) or *Neuter* Verbs. Thus, *sto*, I stand, *curro*, I run. Such verbs express a *state* or an *action*; but the action is not communicated (*passed over*) to another person or thing.

56. The word which stands for the person or thing to which the action of the Verb is directed is called the *Object of the Verb*; and the *sense is incomplete without it*. Thus, *strike*, *love*, *reads*, have no complete meaning without a noun to express *what* is struck or read, and *who* is loved.

* From Lat. *transeo*, 'I pass over;' because the action described by the verb *passes on* to the Object.

† From Lat. *objicio*, 'I expose to,' or 'throw in the way of.'

57. In English, owing to the want of inflexions, we are obliged to arrange words in their *grammatical order*;—i.e. Nom. Verb. Acc. Thus, 'A friend loves his friend.' In Latin, however, we can easily distinguish the mutual relations of words by means of their inflexions; and the order, *for the most part*, is Nom. Acc. Verb. Thus,

- (a) Amīcus amīcum amat,
A friend (his) friend loves.
 (b) Imperātor milītem bonum laudābat,
The general the soldier good was-praising.

In (b) the Adj. follows the Subst. by 24.

58. Remember that the position of words in Latin is one thing, the grammatical order, or construction, is another.

Do not be misled by the expression "the accusative *after* the verb," etc. The accusative *may* stand, and generally does stand, *before* the Verb in Latin; but *in construing* we must take the Verb first, because the Acc. is dependent on the Verb, or (as it is often said) is *governed by* the Verb.

Obs. As a rule, the principal Verb stands *last* in the sentence.

EXERCISE 8.

(Refer to 7, 15, 23, 24.)

Order: Nom. (adj.)—Acc. (adj.)—Verb.

59. *Vocabulary 8.*

adorn,
afford,
angry,
avoid,
build,
carry,
free,
hot,
ivy,

orno,
præsto,
irātus, a, um.
vito,
ædifico,
porto,
libero,
calidus, a, um.
hēdēra,

ornoA-re.
præstA-re.

vitA-re.
ædificA-re.
portA-re.
liberA-re.

Gen. Pl. hederArum.

Vocabulary 8—continued.

<i>Julia,</i>	a female name, 1st Decl.	
<i>pleasant,</i>	gratus, a, um.	
<i>poet,</i>	pōēta,	Gen. Pl. poetArum.
<i>praise,</i>	laudo,	laudA-re.
<i>prepare,</i>	paro,	parA-re.
<i>shade,</i>	umbra,	umbrArum.
<i>story,</i>	fābŭla,	fabulArum.
<i>stream,</i>	rivus,	rivOrum.
<i>swallow,</i>	hirundo,	hirundiNum.
<i>sweet-scented,</i>	odōrus, a, um.	
<i>tell,</i>	narro,	narrA-re.
<i>wall,</i>	murus,	murOrum.
<i>water (subst.),</i>	aqua,	aquArum.
<i>water (verb),</i>	irrigō,	irrigA-re.

In translating from English into Latin both the Singular and the Plural forms of the Verb should be given in Latin whenever the Pronoun 'you' occurs, unless the sense shows that one number only is admissible (51, note).

60. The mild master will free the good slave. You were praising the little girl. The girl will avoid the rough road. The boy was avoiding the cunning fox. The mother praises the good daughter. A slave is preparing hot water. Ivy adorns the ancient temple. The swallow was preparing (its) little nest. We shall build a wall. The girls were adorning (their) heads.

Vulpes vafra agricolam iratum vitabit. Rivus campum latum irrigat. Puella rosam odorem portabat. Quercus umbram gratam præstat. Julia cantat. Cantabit. Puella hortum vitat. Cantabatis. Agricolam vocabitis. Poeta fabulam narrabat. Poetam laudabunt. Ædificabitis.

LESSON 9.

On Forming Three Tenses in Second Conjugation.

(E-verbs.)

61. SECOND CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose Present Stem (8) ends in E.

Thus, *monĒ-re*, to advise. Present Stem, *monĒ-*.

From the Present Stem are formed the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-Simple*.

62. Hence, to form the Present, the Imperfect, and the Future-Simple, we must add the several endings (as given in 51) to the Present Stem. Thus, *monE-o*, *monE-bam*, *monE-bo*.

e is long before a Consonant, short before a Vowel. Thus, *monēbam*, *monēo*.

EXERCISE 9.

(Refer to 30, 31, 57, 58.)

63.

Vocabulary 9.

<i>beak,</i>	<i>rostrum,</i>	<i>Gen. Pl. rostrOrum.</i>
<i>chain,</i>	<i>catēna,</i>	„ <i>catenArum.</i>
<i>fear,</i>	<i>timeo,</i>	<i>timE-re.</i>
<i>frighten,</i>	<i>terreo,</i>	<i>terrE-re.</i>
<i>idle,</i>	<i>ignāvus, a, um.</i>	
<i>queen,</i>	<i>regina,</i>	„ <i>reginArum.</i>
<i>see,</i>	<i>video,</i>	<i>vidE-re.</i>
<i>sit,</i>	<i>sedeo,</i>	<i>sedE-re.</i>
<i>teach,</i>	<i>doceo,</i>	<i>docE-re.</i>

64. Idle slaves fear (their) masters. A shadow will frighten the timid girl. We were sitting. You will see the queen. The queen's slave was frightening the idle

Exercise 9—continued.

boys. We will teach the farmer's daughter. The heavy weight of the iron chain frightens the idle slave.

Agricolæ filium docebas. Puella timida servi umbram timebat. Julia sedebat. Sorores nostræ sedent. Hirundo parva accipitris rostrum timebit. Reginæ milites agricolarum servos terrebant. Servi ignavi catenas ferreas timebunt.

LESSON 10.

On Forming Three Tenses in Third Conjugation.

(Consonant and U-verbs.)

65. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose Present Stem (8) ends in (a) a Consonant, or (b) in the semi-vowel U.

Thus (a) *reG-ĕre*, to rule. Present Stem, *reG-*.

(b) *acU-ĕre*, to sharpen. Present Stem, *acU-*.

From the Present Stem are formed the *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future-Simple*.

66. The endings of the Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple are as follows:—

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Present Tense, Sing.	-o	-is	-it	Plur.	-imus	-itis	-unt
Imperfect „ „	-ēbam	-ēbas	-ēbat	„	-ēbāmus	-ēbātis	-ēbant
Fut.-Simple „ „	-am	-es	-et	„	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent

These endings must be added to the Present Stem in each case to form the tense required. Thus, *reG-o*, *reG-ēbam*, *reG-am*.

Obs. Some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation ending in *-io* are conjugated *partly* like *audio* (4th Conj.). (See Appendix, XXI. *L. P.* § 63.)

EXERCISE 10.

67.

Vocabulary 10.

<i>banish,</i>	<i>pello,</i>	<i>pell</i> -ère.
<i>care,</i>	<i>cura,</i>	<i>Gen. Pl. cur</i> Arum.
<i>garland,</i>	<i>corōna,</i>	coronArum.
<i>play,</i>	<i>ludo,</i>	„ lud-ère.
<i>put on,</i>	<i>induo,</i>	indU-ère.
<i>shut,</i>	<i>claudo,</i>	claud-ère.
<i>sleep,</i>	<i>somnus,</i>	„ somnOrum.
<i>tumble down,</i>	<i>ruo,</i>	rU-ère.
<i>write,</i>	<i>scribo,</i>	scriB-ère.

68. Sleep banishes the farmer's cares. Care will banish sleep. The queen's soldiers will shut the gate of the city. The farmer's idle sons are playing. You will put on a garland. The ancient temple was tumbling down. I was sharpening a knife. They were writing.

Ludebatis. Coronas floreas induent. Epistolas longas scribebam. Agricolaë filia epistolam longam scribet. Ludam. Curæ meæ somnum pellunt. Servus catenam ferream induerat. Murus antiquus ruit. Scribes. Lude-tis. Scribitis. Miles cuspīdem acuēt. Scribetis.

LESSON 11.

On Forming Three Tenses in Fourth Conjugation.

(I-verbs.)

69. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose Present Stem (8) ends in I.

Thus, *audI-re*, to hear. Present Stem, *audI-*.

From the Present Stem are formed the *Present*, *Imper-fect*, and *Future-Simple*.

70. The endings of the Present, Imperfect, and Future Simple, are as follows:—

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Present Tense, Sing.	-o	-s	-t	Plur.	-mus	-tis	-unt
Imperfect, „ „	-ēbam	-ēbas	-ēbat	„	-ēbāmus	-ēbātis	-ēbant
Fut.-Simple „ „	-am	-es	-et	„	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent

These endings must be added to the Present Stem in each case to form the Tense required. Thus audI-o, audI-ebam, audI-am.

i is long before a Consonant, short before a Vowel. Thus, audīmus, audīebam.

EXERCISE 11.

71. Vocabulary 11.

come,	venio,	Gen. Pl.	venI-re.
cup,	poculum,		poculOrum.
drain,	haurio,		haurI-re.
feel,	sentio,		sentI-re.
guard,	custodio,		custodI-re.
harbour,	portus,	„	portUum.
ship,	navis,	„	navIum.
sleep,	dormio,		dormI-re.

72. I will come. The idle boys were feeling pain. Thou art sleeping. You will sleep. Large ships were coming. The queen's soldiers are guarding the harbour. I hear the slave's voice. You will hear an illustrious poet.

Agricolæ servus poculum hauriebat. Navis veniet. Puer ignavus dormit. Puellæ timidæ dolores acutos sentiunt. Dormitis. Venietis. Judicis irati vocem audiebatis. Oves timidæ leonis dentes sentient.

LESSON 12.

Supplementary to the foregoing Exercises.

(Use of Negative. Prepositions in common use ;
do, does, did; omission of *man, thing*.)

73. We have already seen (49) that the *tense endings* in Latin express the varieties of meaning which in English are expressed by means of *auxiliary verbs* (*does, did, shall, will*, etc.).

Of these, *do, does, did*, are now used only in Negative and Interrogative forms, or for the sake of emphasis. Thus: I *do* not love. He *does* not hear. *Did* you hear? You *do* amaze me.

The auxiliary verb must always stand before the *not*. Thus, '*does not*,' '*will not*,' '*can not*.'

74. The Imperfect Tense is used to express

- (1) Action going on in time past; as, *amabam*,
I was loving (at such and such a time),
or, *I did love*. Sometimes, *I loved*.
- (2) Action customary or repeated; as, *ridebat*,
he used to laugh, or *he went on laughing*.
- (3) Action begun or intended, but not complete;
as, *dormiebant*, *they began to sleep*, or, *they were for sleeping*.

75. In English all *things* are *Neuter*: but in Latin the names of things are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*.

76, 77] *Supplementary to foregoing Exercises.* 25

The Substantive is often omitted in Latin when *men*, *women*,* or *things* are meant. If *men* are meant, the Adjective will of course be *masculine*; if *women* are meant, the Adjective will be *feminine*; if *things*, the Adjective will be *neuter*. Thus:

boni, good *men*, *persons*, or *people*; 'the good.'
 bonæ, good *women*.
 bona, good *things*.

The same rule applies to Participles and Pronouns. Adjectives, etc., so used are said to be used *Substantively*.

76. The *form* of the Adjective often leaves it doubtful whether *man* or *thing* is meant. Thus, *boni* might mean 'of a good *man*,' or 'of a good *thing*:' *multorum*, 'of many *men*,' or 'of many *things*.'

In such cases '*thing*' should be translated by a case of '*res*' (fem.), and this *res* must *never* be omitted. Thus, '*good things*' is generally '*bonæ*'; it might be '*res bonæ*,' but it can *never* be '*bonæ*' *alone*.

77. *Prepositions* are used to define the relations of words to each other more precisely than could be effected by means of case-endings.

The following are among the most common :—

With Accusative.

ad, of motion *to*.
 ante, *before*.
 in, of motion *into*.
 per, of motion *through*.
 post, *after*.
 sub,† of motion *under*.

With Ablative.

a, ab, of motion *from*.
 cum, *with* (together with).
 e, ex, of motion *out of*.
 in, of rest *in*.
 sine, *without*.
 sub, of rest *under*.

* The omission of the substantive is less common in the case of *women*.

† *Sub*, with Acc. often denotes *nearness*; as, *sub noctem*, *at nightfall*, *towards night*.

EXERCISE 12.

78.

Vocabulary 12.

<i>abuse,</i>	<i>vitupero,</i>	<i>vituperA-ra.</i>
<i>and,</i>	<i>et; -quē, enclitic.*</i>	
<i>baffle,</i>	<i>elūdo,</i>	<i>eluD-ěre.</i>
<i>branching,</i>	<i>ramōsus, a, um.</i>	
<i>dog,</i>	<i>canis,</i>	<i>Gen. Pl. caNum.</i>
<i>entangle,</i>	<i>impedio,</i>	<i>impedi-re.</i>
<i>excessive,</i>	<i>nimius, a, um.</i>	
<i>fleet (adj.),</i>	<i>lēvis, e.</i>	
<i>fly,</i>	<i>fugio,†</i>	<i>fuG-ěre.</i>
<i>frightened,</i>	<i>terrītus, a, um.</i>	
<i>his own,</i>	<i>suus, a, um.</i>	
<i>leg,</i>	<i>crus,</i>	<i>„ cruRum.</i>
<i>not,</i>	<i>non.</i>	
<i>slenderness,</i>	<i>tenuitas,</i>	<i>(tenuitaT-).</i>
<i>stag,</i>	<i>cervus,</i>	<i>„ cervOrum.</i>
<i>stand,</i>	<i>sto,</i>	<i>stA-re.</i>
<i>tear,</i>	<i>lacero,</i>	<i>lacerA-re.</i>
<i>then,</i>	<i>tum.</i>	
<i>there,</i>	<i>ibi.</i>	
<i>while, whilst,</i>	<i>dum.</i>	

79. The slaves used to come out of the city. The fleet will not come into the harbour. The queen's soldiers were standing before the iron gates of the city. The slaves will sleep after (their)‡ great labour. The sad exiles did not sing in the city. You were not playing. I shall not put on the garland. After sleep come cares. They will not play without your brother. I used to come out of the city through the garden. He did not praise the poet's story. The farmer does not plough without great labour. He used to come under the shade of the ancient oak. He will come to the city. He will sit with (his) sisters under the ancient oak. They began-to-write a letter. I am not sleeping. I did not call. I do not feel sharp pain. The good praise good (things). I will come before night.

* i.e. throwing back its accent on the preceding word, as *dominā-s-que*.

† See 66. *L. P.* § 63.

‡ Possessive Pronouns are seldom expressed, unless their omission would cause ambiguity.

Exercise 12—continued.

Cervus ad* rivum stabat, et in aquâ effigiem suam videbat. Ibi cornua ramōsa laudat et nimiam crurum tenuitatem vituperat. Mox hominum canum-que vocibus territus per campum fugit, et cursu lēvi canes elūdit. Tum silva cornua impedit. Ibi canes cervum dentibus lacerant.

LESSON 13.

The Passive Voice.

(A-verbs and E-verbs.)

80. Verbs have two Voices, the *Active* (from *ago*, 'I do') and the *Passive* † (from *pator*, 'I suffer').

The *Active* denotes that the *Subject* (47) *is* or *does* something; as, *frigeo*, *I am cold*; *curro*, *I run*; *amo puerum*, *I love the boy*.

The *Passive* denotes that the *Subject has something done to it*; as, *amor*, *I am loved*, or, *I am being loved*.

81. Transitive Verbs only are conjugated fully in the *Passive Voice*.

82. FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. — Verbs whose Present Stem ends in A or E (50, 61).

The endings of the Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Indicative Passive, are as follows:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Present Tense,	-or	-ris(ē)	-tur	-mur	-mini	-ntur
Imperfect "	-bar	-bāris(ē)	-bātur	-bāmur	-bāmini	-bantur
Fut.-Simple "	-bor	-bēris(ē)	-bitur	-bitur	-bitmini	-buntur

These endings must be added to the Present Stem in each case to form the Tense required. Thus,

* Translate *by*, or *near*.

† The word '*Passive*' simply means *bearing the effect of the action described by the Verb*. *Suffering*, in the sense of *enduring pain*, is not necessarily implied.

am-or, *I am loved*; monE-bor, *I shall be advised* (51, note; 62).

Obs. The (ě) after the 2nd Pers. Sing. means that the ending is -ris or -rě. Thus, amābāris or amābāre. But -rě for -ris is rare in the *Present Indicative*,* except in the case of *Deponents* (156).

83. The Present Indicative Passive must be rendered in English according to the sense. Thus, amor, *I am being loved*, or *I am loved*.

Similarly, the Imperfect, amābar, may be rendered, *I was being loved*, or occasionally, *I was loved* (74).

The Future-Simple takes the sign 'shall' or 'will,' as in the Active Voice. Thus, amābor, *I shall be loved*; monēbitur, *he will be advised* (49).

84. Either the Active or the Passive Voice of a Transitive Verb may be used to describe one and the same action. Thus, we may say either 'I praise the boy,' or 'The boy is praised by me.'

85. In changing an Active into a Passive Sentence remember three things—

1. The *Object* (acc.) of the Active Verb becomes the *Subject* (nom.) of the Passive Verb.
2. The *Subject* of the Active Verb (if a *person* or *living being*) is put in the *Ablative* with the *Preposition a* or *ab* (37).

EXAMPLE.—Magister laudat puerum (*the master praises the boy*), becomes, Puer a magistro laudatur (*the boy is praised by the master*).

3. But if the *Subject* of the Active Verb is a *thing without life*, the *Ablative* of the *Instrument*, without a *Preposition*, must be used (37). Thus, Pax paritur bello, *Peace is produced by war*.

* Because of its resemblance to the Infinitive Active and the Imperative Passive.

EXERCISE 13.

(Refer to 37, 47, 83, 85.)

86.

Vocabulary 13.

<i>cavalry,</i>	<i>equitātus,</i>		(<i>equitatU-</i>).
<i>enemy,</i>	<i>hostis,</i>	<i>Gen. Pl.</i>	<i>hostilum.</i>
<i>finger,</i>	<i>dīgītus,</i>	„	<i>digitOrum.</i>
<i>horse,</i>	<i>equus,</i>	„	<i>equOrum.</i>
<i>needle,</i>	<i>acus,</i>	„	<i>acUum.</i>
<i>put-to-flight,</i>	<i>fūgo,</i>		<i>fugA-re.</i>
<i>restrain,</i>	<i>cohibeo,</i>		<i>cohibĒ-re.</i>
<i>spur,</i>	<i>calcar,</i>	„	<i>calcārIum.</i>
<i>urge,</i>	<i>urgeo,</i>		<i>urgĒ-re.</i>
<i>weapon,</i>	<i>tĕlum,</i>	„	<i>telOrum.</i>
<i>weight,</i>	<i>pondus,</i>	„	<i>pondĕRum.</i>
<i>wound (verb),</i>	<i>vulnĕro,</i>		<i>vulnerA-re.</i>

87. I am being praised. He was being frightened. You are feared. We shall be praised. You will be seen. We are praised. You were being wounded. The girls will be frightened. Slaves, you shall be freed. Boys, you are being called. Hot water is being prepared. Heavy burdens were being carried. Temples are being built. Heavy weights will be carried. The cavalry will not be put to flight. I shall be wounded with weapons. Horses are urged with spurs. Dogs are restrained with chains. Masters are feared by boys. The enemy (*pl.*) will be put to flight by our cavalry.

[Turn the following sentences into the Passive Construction, 84, 85.]

Horses carry burdens. All animals fear the lion's voice. The hawk was frightening the swallow. The masters will not free the slaves. Ivy used to adorn the ancient wall. The dogs are tearing the stag. The poet will tell a story. The enemy (*pl.*) will put our cavalry to flight.

Amici ab amicis amantur. Vocabamini. Laudabere. Vitabimini. Vocabare. Amamini. A regina videbamus. Pueri ignavi a magistro non laudabuntur. Muri a servis ædificabantur. Puellæ digitus acu vulnerabitur. Puella digitum acu vulnerabit. Pueri leonis voce terrebuntur.

Exercise 13—continued.

Milites, ab imperatore vocamini. Frater meus hostium telis vulnerabatur. Milites nostri ab hostium equitatu fugabantur.

[Turn into the Passive Construction.]

Boni bona laudant. Servus mensam portabat. Milites equos calcaribus urgebant. Deus malos non amat. Agricola canem catena cohibebat. Accipitris rostrum hirundinem lacerat. Fratris mei filius vulpem vafra videbat. Puer puellæ digitum acu vulnerat.

LESSON 14.

The Passive Voice—continued.

(Consonant and U-verbs. I-verbs.)

88. THIRD CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose Present Stem ends in a Consonant, or the semi-vowel U (65).

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Verbs whose Present Stem ends in I (69).

The endings of the Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Indicative Passive, are as follows:—

		Singular.			Plural.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
3 Conj. Present,	-or	-ēris(ē)	-itur		-imur	-imini	-untur
4 Conj. „	-or	-ris(ē)	-tur		-mur	-mini	-untur
3 & 4 } Imperfect,	-ēbar	-ēbāris(ē)	-ēbātur		-ēbāmur	-ēbāmini	-ēbantur
Conj. } Fut.-Sim.	-ar	-ēris(ē)	-ētur		-emur	-ēmini	-entur

These endings must be added to the Present Stem in each case to form the Tense required. Thus, reg-or, acu-or; audi-ēbar (70, 82, Obs.).

For the Passive of Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation in -io, see Appendix, XXI.

EXERCISE 14.

(Refer to 84, 85.)

89.

Vocabulary 14.

<i>bend,</i>	<i>flecto,</i>	<i>flecT-ère.</i>
<i>camp,</i>	<i>castrā (n. pl.),</i>	<i>castrOrum.</i>
<i>dig,</i>	<i>fōdio,</i>	<i>fōD-ère.</i>
<i>flower,</i>	<i>flos,</i>	<i>floRum.</i>
<i>lead,</i>	<i>duco,</i>	<i>dūC-ère.</i>
<i>legion,</i>	<i>legio,</i>	<i>legioNum.</i>
<i>open,</i>	<i>aperio,</i>	<i>aperĪ-re.</i>
<i>punish,</i>	<i>punio,</i>	<i>punĪ-re.</i>
<i>receive,</i>	<i>accipio,</i>	<i>acciP-ère.</i>
<i>scatter,</i>	<i>spargo,</i>	<i>sparG-ère.</i>
<i>sprinkle,</i>	<i>cingo,</i>	<i>cinG-ère.</i>
<i>surround,</i>	<i>capio,</i>	<i>caP-ère.</i>
<i>take,</i>	<i>fossa,</i>	<i>fossARum.</i>
<i>trench,</i>		

90. I am being led. You were being punished. A long letter will be written. You will be banished. They will be led. Flowers were being scattered by boys. The gate is being opened. Reeds are bent with the wind. The idle boys will be punished. The gates of the city are being guarded by our legions. The girl's head was being surrounded with a garland.

[Turn into the Passive Construction.]

The girls will scatter roses. The soldiers are surrounding the camp with a trench. The enemy (*pl.*) will baffle our legions. The slaves were digging a trench. The master was punishing the idle boys. The soldier was guarding the gate of the city. The farmers are draining (their) cups.

Ducimur. Urbs a militibus nostris capietur. Epistolæ a pueris scribebantur. Enses acuuntur. Exsules ab imperatore ex urbe pellentur. Castra fossa cingentur. Regina in urbem ducebatur. Epistola accipiebatur. Puniemur. Puniebare. Eludebamini. Pellere. Pellimini.

32 On forming the Perfect, Pluperfect, and [91, 92]

Exercise 14—continued.

[Turn into the Passive Construction.]

Ventus arundinem flectebat. Servus portam aperiet.
Legiones nostræ fossam fodient. Corona caput puellæ
cingit. Agricola cultrum acuit. Puer epistolam accipiet.
Imperator milites ducebat. Soror mea dolorem acutum
sentiet.

LESSON 15.

On forming the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Indicative Active.

(Adjectives in -x, -ns, -rs.)

91. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect*
Active, are formed from the *Perfect Stem* (*L. P.* § 47).

The following Table shows the Perfect Stem of the
Model Verbs, amo, moneo, rego, acuo, audio:—

1st Conj.	A-Verbs,	am-o	Perfect Stem, amāV-
2nd Conj.	E-Verbs,	mone-o	„ monU-
3rd Conj.	{ Cons.-Verbs,	reg-o	„ rex (=regs),
	{ U-Verbs,	acu-o	„ acU-
4th Conj.	I-Verbs,	audi-o	„ audiV

All Perfects are not formed alike. Exceptions will be
found, *L. P.* § 81, pp. 66-72.

92. The Endings of the Perfect, Pluperfect, and
Future-Perfect Indicative Active, in all four Conjugations, are as follows:—

	<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
Perfect,	-i	-isti	-it		-imus	-istis	-erunt or ēre
Pluperfect,	-eram	-eras	-erat		-erāmus	-erātis	-erant
Fut.-Perf.,	-ero	-eris	-erit		-erimus	-eritis	-erint

* The Future-Perfect is *not* a tense of the Subjunctive, as stated in some Grammars.

These endings must be added to the Perfect Stem in each case to form the tense required. Thus, amāV-i, *I have loved*; monU-ěram, *I had advised*; audiV-ěro, *I shall have heard*.

93. The Latin Language has no separate form for the *Present-Perfect* (Perfect-Definite) and the *Simple Perfect*, or *Aorist* * (Past Indefinite). Thus, amāvi may mean either '*I have loved*,' or '*I loved*,' according to the sense (94).

'*Have*' (*hast, has*) is the sign of the *Present-Perfect*. Some English Verbs, however, form their Perfect with '*am*,' and their Pluperfect with '*was*.' Thus, '*I am come*' = *I have come*. '*I was come*' = *I had come*. So, *He is fallen*. *They are fled* (155).

94. The Present-Perfect, or Perfect-Definite, implies that the action is complete at the time of speaking (*i.e.* the *present time*), and that the effects of the action continue.

The Simple-Perfect, or Aorist, denotes a single or momentary action in time past, without reference to any other action. It is the Tense of *narratives*. Thus we say—

Pres.-Perf. { *I have (now) written* a letter.
 { *I have seen* my brother (to-day).

But—

Simple-Perf., { *I wrote* two letters (yesterday).
or Aorist { *I saw* my brother (six years ago).

The Pluperfect denotes action complete in time past. Thus, amaveram, *I had loved*.

Obs. The Aorist must be carefully distinguished from the *Imperfect*, which implies *contemporaneous* action, *i.e.* that something else was going on at the time referred to. Our English idiom is frequently misleading. Thus, *I often met him when I was in town* (*i.e.* used to meet him) (74).

* *i.e.* Indefinite. Derived from the Greek ἀ-όριστος (*a-oristos*), *without boundaries, indefinite*.

34 On forming the Perfect, Pluperfect, and [95—97

95. Adjectives ending in *-x* (as *audax*), and in *-ns*, *rs* (as *ingens*, *iners*), follow I-nouns of the Third Declension (*L. P.* § 33).

The Neuter Accusative Singular is the same as the Nominative.

The Ablative Singular ends in *-ī*; less commonly in *-ě*.

The Neuter Nom. Voc. Acc. Plural end in *-ā*; Gen. in *-ūm*.

The same rules apply to *Participles* ending in *-ans*, *-ens*; as, *amans*, *monens*, etc.

Obs. With Participles the Ablative Singular in *-ě* is more common in prose. The Ablative Absolute *always* ends in *-ě* (Appendix, XI, B, 3).

EXERCISE 15.

96. Vocabulary 15.

[In this Exercise, and those following, the *Stems only* will be given, with the characters in Capital letters where necessary.]

<i>absent,</i>	absens,	absent-
<i>deceitful,</i>	fallax,	fallāc-
<i>forward</i> (adj.),	pētūlans,	petulant-
<i>fresh,</i>	rēcens,	recent-
<i>happy,</i>	fēlix,	fēlic-
<i>inactive,</i>	īners,	inert-
<i>innocent,</i>	insons,	insont-
<i>mad,</i>	dēmens,	dement-
<i>skilful,</i>	sollers,	sollert-
<i>swift,</i>	vēlox,	vēlōc-
<i>talkative,</i>	lōquax,	lōquāc-
<i>to-day,</i>	hōdiē.	
<i>wise,</i>	sapiens,	sapient-
<i>yesterday</i> (adv.),	hērī.	

97. You will have heard the skilful poet's story. The swift dogs had torn the stag. The stag was being torn by the swift dogs. The soldiers were banishing the good (75) and wise from the city (77). The slaves will have prepared hot water. Hot water will be prepared by the slaves. I have called the absent boys. The judge had not praised the talkative poet. I avoided the mad poets.

Exercise 15—continued.

The master has punished the idle boys. My brother will have avoided the forward girls. The soldiers of the enemy (*pl.*) will have *put* our soldiers *to-flight*. The inactive (75) have avoided labour. Labours will be avoided by the inactive. The swift horse had carried a heavy weight. A heavy weight was being carried by the swift horse. You will have slept. The legions will have guarded the gates of the city. The wise masters freed (their) slaves yesterday. They will have sung. I have wounded (my) finger with a knife. We had avoided the wives of the talkative. I have taught deceitful boys. You had not warned the innocent. We have sharpened the knives to-day. You have led legions. They have guarded the city. I love the smell of fresh flowers.

[When there is nothing to show whether the Aorist or the Present-Perfect is the tense meant, both translations should be given.]

Soror mea rosas recentes ex horto portaverat. Insonitium sorores ad reginam sapientem veniebant. Puerorum fallacium amicos non laudavero. Exsulem mæstum hodie terruistis. Puella coronam non induerit. Telum fratrem meum vulneravit. Frater tuus telo vulnerabatur. Fabula longa a servo loquaci narrabitur. Urbis porta a servis fallacibus aperitur. Canem catēna cohibuisti. Vulpem vafram terrueratis. Vox leonis animalia terruerit. Imperator milites in castra duxerat. Amicorum absentium epistolas amamus. Amici absentes ab amicis laudantur. Epistolam longam ab amico absenti hodie accipiemus. Dominus iratus a servo inerti vitatur. Judex, ab insontibus amaris. A pueris petulantibus non laudabere. Puerorum feliciorem sorores in horto ludebant. Culter ferreus ab agricola acuitur. Flores aquâ spargebantur. Hostium equitatus ab imperatore sollerti eludetur.

LESSON 16.

The Comparative and Superlative of
Adjectives.

(Acer. Unus.)

98. Besides having Inflexions to denote differences of Gender, etc. (23), most Adjectives have also inflexions to denote differences or *degrees* of Quality.

These *Degrees* are three in number, and are called the *Positive*, the *Comparative*, and the *Superlative*.

99. The Positive is the simple form; as, *durus*, *hard*. The Comparative denotes a *higher* degree of the quality, when *two* persons or things are compared; as, *durior*, *harder*, or *more hard*.* The Superlative denotes the *highest* degree, when more than two persons or things are compared; as, *durissimus*, *hardest*, or *most hard*.†

100. The Comparative is usually formed by adding *-or* to the first case of the Positive which ends in *-i*. Thus, *durus*; Gen. Sing., *duri*. Comparative, *durior*; neut. *durius*.

The Superlative is usually formed by adding *-issimus* to the first case of the Positive which ends in *-i*. Thus, *durus*; Gen. Sing., *duri*. Superlative, *durissimus*, *a*, *um*.

[A more accurate method is to add *-ior* (masc. and fem.) to the Stem without the character, for the Comparative; and *-issimus*, *a*, *um*, for the Superlative. Thus, from Stem *dur-*, Comparative, *dur-ior*; Superlative, *dur-issimus*.]

* Sometimes, '*rather hard*,' or '*too hard*,' when '*too*' is no emphatic.

† Sometimes, '*very hard*.'

101. Adjectives ending in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rĭmus*, *a*, *um*, to the Positive. Thus, *tener*, *tender*; *tenerior*, *tener-rĭmus*; *acer*, *keen*; *acrior*, *acer-rĭmus*.

102. *Făcĭlis*, *easy*, with five other Adjectives ending in *-lis*,* forms the Superlative in *-lĭmus*. Thus, *facil-lĭmus*.

[For Irregular Comparison see *L. P.*, § 36.]

103. Comparatives ending in *-or* (neut. *-us*) are declined like Consonant Nouns of the Third Declension; as, *amor*, *corpus* (*L. P.* § 21).

Obs. The *penult* (last syllable but one) of Comparatives is always *long* in the Oblique cases. Thus, *mĕliōris*.

104. 'Acer,' *keen*, and twelve other Adjectives, are declined like *tristis* (42), except that they have Masc. in *-er*; Fem. in *-ris*; Neut. in *-rĕ*. Thus, *acer*, *acris*, *acre* (Appendix XI, B, 4). But 'cĕler,' *swift*, keeps *ĕ* throughout; thus, *cĕler*, *cĕlĕris*, *cĕlĕrĕ* (*L. P.* § 33, C).

105. *Unus*, *a*, *um*, *one*, forms the Genitive Singular in *-iūs* (all genders), and the Dative in *-ī* (all genders).

In all other cases it follows the 1st and 2nd Declensions.

Decline like *unus*, *ālius*,† *nullus*,
Also *sōlus*, *tōtūs*, *ullus*.

Obs. *Alter*, *neuter*, and *ūter*, with its compounds, have Gen. Sing. in *-iūs*, and Dat. in *-ī* (Appendix, XI, A).

* *Difficĭlis*, *dissimĭlis*, *grăcĭlis*, *hūmĭlis*, *sĭmĭlis*.

† *Alius* makes *Neuter* Nom. Acc. *aliud*; and Gen. Sing. *alius* (all genders), for *ali-iūs*.

EXERCISE 16.

(Refer to 73, 74.)

106.

Vocabulary 16.

<i>alert,</i>	ălăcer, cris, crē,	ălăcr-
<i>alone,</i>	sōlus, a, um, <i>Gen.</i> solius.	
<i>any,</i>	ullus, a, um, „ ullius.	
<i>black,</i>	niger, a, um,	nigr-
<i>bury,</i>	sēpēlio, sepeli-	sepeli-re.
<i>difficult,</i>	difficilis, ē.	
<i>easy,</i>	fācilis, ē.	
<i>have,</i>	hābeo, habū-	habēre.
<i>lowly,</i>	hūmilis, ē.	
<i>no, none,</i>	nullus, a, um, <i>Gen.</i> nullius.	
<i>short,</i>	brēvis, ē.	
<i>show,</i>	monstro, monstrāv-	monstrāre.
<i>swift,</i>	cēler, ris, rē.	
<i>tree,</i>	arbor,	arbōr-
<i>whole,</i>	tōtus,* a, um, <i>Gen.</i> totius.	

107. The talkative poet will have told the whole story. The queen will see (her) soldiers alert and joyful. The easiest road will be shown by the lowly slave. The slave will show the shortest road. We were sitting under a very lofty tree. The swiftest stag has very slender legs. You will not have carried a heavier chain. He used-to have a blacker slave. No daughter has had a milder father. Whilst you are asking the way, I shall have come into the city. Ivy was adorning the walls of the whole city. No farmers will have keener dogs. Reeds afford no shade. The lion fears the voice of no animal. The voice of no animal is feared by the lion. We have not buried a more illustrious man. You shall have the heaviest burden. They had not seen a loftier tree. The care of many things (76) will banish sleep. Sleep will be banished by the care of many things. They had avoided the roughest road. All (men) praised my brother's most beautiful daughter. I have heard a more talkative man.

* *Totus* generally precedes the Substantive with which it is in agreement (24, 211).

Exercise 16—continued.

Sapientes somnum nimium vitabunt. Sedulos laudamus. Oves nigerimæ non laudantur. Puer gracillimus cum regina ante portam stabat. Rivi prata irrigant. Prata rivorum aquis irrigantur. Ædem celeberrimam in urbe ædificavistis. Agricolaë unius oves non vituperavero. Milites acerrimi totius urbis portas custodiverint. Hostes fossam altam foderant. Milites nostri fossâ altiore castra cinxerunt. Puellæ timidissimæ dolores acutissimos sentiunt. Ad hortum pulcriorem veniemus. Boni bonos non vituperabunt. Boni a bonis non vituperabuntur. Urbem salubriorem non videbitis. Iratorum vocem timueritis. Audaces vulnera nulla timent. Vulnera nulla ab audacibus timentur. Viam difficillimam vitavimus. Pavonis superbissimi vocem non laudo. Puerorum inertissimorum vitia punimus. Servos alacriores non vidisti. Arbörum altissimarum umbram amamus.

LESSON 17.

The Infinitive.

108. The Verb Infinitive* consists of two parts:—

- (a) The *Infinitive* (improperly called a *Mood*), which is a *Neuter Noun Substantive*, with the *Gerunds*† and *Supines*‡ for its cases (20⁽³⁾).
- (b) The *Participles*,|| which are Verbal Adjectives. (L. P. § 45.)

The Infinitive expresses action or condition *generally*, without any limitation of Person or Number.

* *i.e.* not limited by Number and Person (45, note).

† From *gero*, 'I perform,' or 'carry on.'

‡ From the Adj. *supinus*, 'bent backward.' The name is meaningless.

|| From *pars*, 'a part,' and *capio*, 'I take.' Participles *take part* of the properties of *Verbs*, and *part* of the properties of *Adjectives*, in that they govern cases, and have inflexions for case and gender.

109. The Verb-Noun Infinitive resembles the Finite Verb in having Tenses, and in governing the same case as the Verb to which it belongs.

110. The Verb-Noun Infinitive has two tense-forms proper.

- (1) The Present and Imperfect Infinitive *Active* are formed in 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conjugations by adding *-rē* to the Present Stem. Thus, *amā-rē*, *monē-rē*, *audi-rē*. In the 3rd Conjugation *-ērē* must be added to the Present Stem. Thus, *reg-ērē*, *acu-ērē*.
- (2) The Perfect and Pluperfect Active are formed by adding *-issē* to the Perfect Stem. Thus, *amāv-isse*, *rex-isse*.

Obs. The Future Infinitive Active, and the Perfect and Future in the Passive, are *Compound Tenses*, and will be noticed hereafter (150).

111. For the Present and Imperfect Infinitive *Passive* the ending *-ri* must be added to the Present Stem, in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conjugations; and *-i* in the 3rd Conjugation. Thus, *amā-ri*, *to be loved*; *reg-i*, *to be ruled*, etc.

112. The Verb-Noun Infinitive may be thus declined:—

Nom.	āmārē,	loving, love, or to love.
Acc.	(A) āmārē,	loving, or love.
	(B) amandum,	
	(C) amātum,	
Gen.	amandi,	of loving, or of love.
Dat.	amando,	for loving, or for love.
Abl.	(α) amando,	by, with, or from loving; or by, with, or from love.
	(β) amātu,	in respect of loving, or in respect of love.

- (A) Acc. after Verbs * expressing *beginning, custom, desire, duty, power, wish*, etc. Also after Verbs of *perceiving, declaring, thinking, knowing*, etc.
 (B) Acc. after Prepositions (*ad, inter, ob*).
 (C) Acc. after Verbs of *Motion*.
 (a) Abl. of *Instrument, Cause, or Manner*; and also after Prepositions (*a, ab, de, ex, in*).†
 (β) Abl. of *Respect*, with certain Adjectives.

Obs. The Perfect (and Pluperfect) Form, *amavisse, to have loved*, may also stand as Nom. or as Acc. (A). But the tense-forms of the Infinitive are not used as Genitive, Dative, or Ablative cases.

113. The Verb-Noun *āmārē* may be variously translated, '*loving*,' '*love*,' '*to love*,' or '*to be loving*.' It really means '*the act of loving*;' and so differs from '*amor*,' *the feeling or passion of love*, and '*amans*,' *the person loving, i.e., 'one who loves,' = 'the lover.'*

[The Preposition '*to*,' though a very common sign of the English Infinitive, is not a part of the Infinitive, nor is it by any means always used. Thus, we say '*Bid me despair*,' '*I can run*,' '*I could write*,' '*I dare go*.' Here the Verbs in Italics are in the Infinitive: consequently, the Verb that follows such words as *bid, can, could, dare*, etc. must be in the Infinitive in Latin.]

* Very rarely after Prepositions.

† Rarely with *pro*; never with *sine*.

EXERCISE 17.

114.

Vocabulary 17.

<i>cover,</i>	<i>tego,</i>	<i>tex-</i>	<i>teg-ěre.</i>
<i>err,</i>	<i>erro,</i>	<i>errāv-</i>	<i>errā-re.</i>
<i>everything,</i>	<i>omnia (n. pl. omnis, all).</i>		
<i>falsehood,</i>	<i>mendācium,</i>		<i>mendaciō-</i>
<i>know,</i>	<i>scio,</i>	<i>sciv-</i>	<i>sci-re.</i>
<i>learn,</i>	<i>disco,</i>	<i>didic-</i>	<i>disc-ěre.</i>
<i>sin,</i>	<i>pecco,</i>	<i>peccāv-</i>	<i>peccā-re.</i>
<i>suppose,</i>	<i>puto,</i>	<i>putāv-</i>	<i>putā-re.</i>

[Endings of the Infinitive. 1st Conj. 2nd Conj. 3rd Conj. 4th Conj.
 Pres. and Imperf. āre ěre ěre ire (*Act.*)
 " " " āri ěri i iri (*Pass.*)
 Perf. and Pluperf. isse isse isse isse (*Act.*)]

115. To praise. To have praised. To be praised. To have feared. To be frightened. To shut. To guard the gate. To have led an army. To be restrained. To have covered faults with falsehood. Sinning (113). To have known everything. To be supposed. To be shut. To have learnt.

Fugěre. Fugisse. Digitum acu vulneravisse. Servum liberare. Onera portare. Bonos sapientesque ex urbe pellěre. Scribi. Hauriri. Fugāre. Spargi floribus. Vidisse. Accipi. Discěre omnia. Fugavisse.

Decline like *āmāre* (112) the Infinitive of *āro*, *pāro*, *orno*, *ædifico*.

LESSON 18.

The Infinitive—continued. Sum. Possum. Volo.

(The Prolative Infinitive.)

116. The Verb-Noun Infinitive may be,

- (1) The Nominative, or *Subject* (47) of another Verb.
- (2) The Accusative, or *Object* (54) after another Verb.

- (3) It may carry on and complete the meaning and construction of another Verb. When thus used it is called *Prolative** (*L. P.* § 140, 4, and *N. S.* vii. p. 140).

The *Prolative Infinitive* is used with such Verbs as *begin, continue, cease, wish, am able, am thought, am said, seem, etc.* etc.

- EXAMPLES. (1) *Ludere est jucundum, Playing, play, or to play, is pleasant; or, It is pleasant to play.*†
 (2) *Amo ludere, I love playing, or to play.*
 (3) *Possum currere, I can run. Putor errare, I am supposed to err, or to be erring.*

117. The Auxiliary Verb 'sum,' *I am*, and the Verbs 'possum,' *I am able, or I can*, 'volo,' *I wish, or am willing*, form their Present Indicative as follows:—

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Sing.	sum	ēs	est	Plur.	sūmus	estis	sunt
„	possum	pōtēs	pōtest	„	possumus	pōtestis	possunt
„	volo	vis	vult	„	volumus	vultis	volunt

The Verb 'sum' takes the same case after it as before it. The Adjective which follows *sum* must agree with the Substantive to which it refers. Thus, *puer est bonus, the boy is good* (23).

[For the remaining tenses, see Appendix, XVIII, XX, and *L. P.* § 50, 80.]

* From *pro-ferre*, 'to carry forward,' 'extend.' The *Prolative Infinitive* is also joined to Participles, and sometimes, by the poets, to Adjectives.

† The Pronoun 'it' is only a sort of peg on which to hang what follows. It stands as the representative of the coming sentence.

EXERCISE 18.

(Refer to 23, 108, 113, 116.)

118.

Vocabulary 18.

<i>am able,</i> }	possum,	pötü-	posse.
<i>can,</i> }			
<i>cannot,</i>	non possum.		
<i>disgraceful,</i>	turpis, e.		
<i>learned,</i>	doctus, a, um.		
<i>natural-to-man,</i>	hūmānus, a, um.		
<i>never,</i>	nunquam.		
<i>often,</i>	sæpe.		
<i>safety,</i>	sālus,		salūt-
<i>say,</i>	dico,	dix-	dic-ère.
<i>seek,</i>	pēto,	pētiv-	pēt-ère.
<i>well (adv.),</i>	bēnē.		
<i>wish,</i>	vōlo,	völlü-	velle.

[Remember to leave out the 'ü' in such sentences as 'It is pleasant to play.' See note, p. 43.]

119. Sinning is disgraceful. I love to hear the poet's stories. *It is natural-to-man to err. It is not easy to sing well.** The boy wishes to be learned. I cannot praise idle boys. The citizens are preparing to seek safety by flight. They love sleeping. The farmer's daughters used to learn singing. The slaves are busy. My brother's son is very slender. Loving is natural-to-man. To write a letter well is difficult. It will be very easy to frighten timid girls. It is pleasant to have loved. The oak is very hard. All falsehoods are most disgraceful. The general is said to have led the army. We wish to know everything. We cannot carry burdens. Lions cannot be restrained with chains. They were wishing to avoid the rough road. You will have been able to see the queen. You wish to put on a crown. Julia is said to be loved by (her) friends. The boy will be said to have covered his fault with a falsehood. The farmers were supposed to be ploughing.

* '*Bene cantare.*' Adverbs generally stand immediately before the word which they qualify.

Exercise 18—continued.

Omnia bene discere non possumus. In horto sedisse jucundum fuerit. Turpe est pugnare. Fugere est turpissimum. Pueri sæpe sunt petulantiores (99, note). Bene arare est difficillimum. Pueri, magistrum eludere non poteritis. Dicitur ignavos nunquam laudavisse. Epistolam scribere non poteram. Ignavi esse non volumus. Vis castra videre. Doctus fuisse dicetur. Docti esse dicebantur. Pater meus sub arbore sedere amabat. Servus portam claudere non potuerit. Non omnes milites sunt fortes. Sæpe canes saltare docentur. Non omnes homines amare possumus. Lycurgus leges ab Apolline didicisse putabatur. Demosthēnis pater cultros vendidisse creditur. Ex equo pugnare Thessali invenērunt.

Cornix sitiens urnam reperit. Sed urna erat profunda, nec aqua a cornice contingi poterat. Tum lapillos ex arenā legit, et in urnam dejecit. Sic aqua levatur, et cornix bibere potest.

Ranæ regem a Jove petivisse dicuntur. Jupiter trabem ingentem in lacum dejecit. Ranæ primum refugerunt; deinde in trabe sederunt, alium-que regem petiverunt. Tum Jupiter hydrum misit. At hydus plurimas statim devoravit.

LESSON 19.

The Infinitive—continued. Gerunds.

(Personal and Demonstrative Pronouns.)

120. The Gerunds (108) are cases of a *Neuter Verb-Noun* of the 2nd Declension. They answer to the English Verbals in *-ing*; as, *loving, seeing, hearing*; i.e. *the act of loving*, etc. etc. (113).

121. The Gerunds are formed from the Present Stem by adding the following endings:—

	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat. Abl.</i>
A-verbs and E-verbs, 1st and 2nd Conj. }	-ndum	-ndi	-ndo
Cons. and U-verbs; I-verbs 3rd and 4th Conj. . }	-endum	-endi	-endo

Thus, ama-ndum, mone-ndi, reg-endo, audi-endo.

122. (1) The Accusative Gerund is used after Prepositions, chiefly, *ad, inter, ob* (Appendix, XXIII, A).

(2) The Genitive Gerund is used with many Substantives and Adjectives, especially those which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, skill*, or their opposites (*L. P.* § 132, I).

(3) The Dative Gerund is less frequent. It is used with Verbs and phrases expressing *purpose*, and with Adjectives expressing *fitness*, and the like.

(4) The Ablative Gerund is an Ablative of *Instrument, Cause, or Manner*, and is also used after certain Prepositions which govern an Abl. case, chiefly, *a, ab, de, ex, in*: rarely with *pro*; with *sine*, never (Appendix, XXIII, B; *L. P.* § 111-113).

- EXAMPLES. (1) *Inter ludendum, whilst or during playing; ad discendum, for learning; or, to learn* (after Adjectives expressing *fitness, inclination, etc.*, and Verbs of *Motion*).
 (2) *Amor discendi, the love of learning.*
 (3) *Dat operam discendo, he pays attention to learning; utilis bibendo, good for drinking.**
 (4) *Docendo discimus, we learn by teaching; in iudicando severus, stern in judging.*

Obs. The Acc. and Gen. are often found with a qualifying Adverb; as, *ad bene vivendum, for living well; beate vivendi, of living happily.*

123. Gerunds govern the same cases as the Verbs from which they come. Thus, *studium obtemperandi legibus (dat.), the desire of obeying the laws.*

Transitive Gerunds, however, seldom take an Accusative of the Object, unless the Object is a *Pronoun* or a *Neuter Adjective*. Thus, *studium aliquid agendi, plura habendi, the desire of doing something, of having more.*

124. Demonstrative Pronouns† are *Adjectival*, and follow the rule given for Adjectives (23).

They are also often used *Substantively* (75), *i.e.* without the Substantives being expressed with which they agree. Thus, *hi, these men; hæc, these things, etc.*

125. The Preposition ‘*cum*’ is written after the Ablative of Personal Pronouns, and forms one word with them‡. Thus, *mēcum, vobiscum, etc.; not cum me, cum vobis, etc.*

[For the Inflection of the Personal Pronouns, *ego, I, tu, thou, or you*, see Appendix, XVI, and *L. P.* § 38.]

* But *utilis, aptus, idoneus, etc.*, are more commonly found with Prep. *ad* and the *Accusative*.

† Derived from Prep. *pro*, ‘instead of,’ and *nomen*, ‘a noun;’ because they are used as substitutes for Nouns. *Demonstrative* Pronouns (from *demonstro*, ‘I point out’) point to some defined object; *Personal* Pronouns denote the speaker or the person spoken to.

‡ The same rule applies to the Relative Pronoun *quī*. Thus, *quocum, quacum, quibuscum, not cum quo, etc.* (165).

EXERCISE 19.

126.

Vocabulary 19.

<i>act,</i>	<i>āgo,</i>	<i>ēg-</i>	<i>ag-ēre.</i>
<i>born,</i>	<i>nātus, a, um.</i>		
<i>desirous,</i>	<i>cūpidus, a, um (with Gen.).</i>		
<i>draw out,</i>	<i>ēlicio,</i>	<i>ēlicu-</i>	<i>ēlic-ēre.</i>
<i>drink,</i>	<i>bībo,</i>	<i>bīb-</i>	<i>bib-ēre.</i>
<i>good (i. e. serviceable),</i>	<i>ūtilis, e.</i>		
<i>ignorant,</i>	<i>ignārus, a, um.</i>		
<i>live,</i>	<i>vivo,</i>	<i>vix-</i>	<i>vīv-ēre.</i>
<i>opinion,</i>	<i>opinio,</i>		<i>opiniōn-</i>
<i>pleasure,</i>	<i>voluptas,</i>		<i>voluptāt-</i>
<i>pupil,</i>	<i>discipulus,</i>		<i>discipulō-</i>
<i>question,</i>	<i>interrogō,</i>	<i>interrogāv-</i>	<i>interrogā-re.</i>
<i>skilled, skilful in,</i>	<i>peritus, a, um (with Gen.).</i>		
<i>tired,</i>	<i>fessus, a, um.</i>		
<i>understand,</i>	<i>intelligo,</i>	<i>intellex,</i>	<i>intellig-ēre.</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (Appendix, XVI; *L. P.* § 38).(A) *Unemphatic.*

is, ea, id, } 'that' (used of persons or things already mentioned).
Gen. ejus

(B) *Emphatic.*

- (1) *hic, hæc, hoc,* } 'this' (near me).
Gen. hujus
- (2) *iste, ista, istud,* } 'that' (near you); 'that of yours.'
Gen. istius
- (3) *ille, illa, illud,* } 'that' (near him); 'yonder.'
Gen. illius

Is, ea, id, are often used, as *Weak Demonstratives*, for the English Pronouns, *he, she, it,* etc. *Ille*, on the contrary, is always a strong and emphatic Pronoun. Thus, *ille, that person yonder, 'he;'* *illi, 'they,'* etc. (75).

[Pronouns in Italics (as *we*) are emphatic, and are to be translated (48).]

127. We blame this* boy's love of playing. This boy's love of playing is blamed by us. The water of

* Be careful to make the Demonstrative agree with the right substantive.

Exercise 19—continued.

yonder river is good for drinking. Sōcrātes used to draw out the opinions of his pupils by questioning. The opinions of (his) pupils used to be drawn out by Socrates by questioning. We are born for understanding and acting (122, 1). Soldiers often shout *while drinking*.¹ We shall avoid the enemy by flying: *you* are preparing to defend the city. That slave of yours is tired with standing. That* boy's father had a blacker slave. This farmer's son is very ignorant of ploughing. That road is very rough; *we* will avoid it. I wish to show (to) *you* a very short road; *we* will walk through yonder meadow. We are very desirous of coming *with you* to your city. Those boys of yours were coming through the city at *nightfall*. Yonder soldier was guarding this gate. His† shadow frightened them. *While flying*¹ they began to call *you*. I cannot love the poet; I shall be able to praise his book. We are desirous of many things (76). We are desirous of learning many things (123). We were wishing to seek safety by flying. Safety was being sought by *us*.

Voluptatem ex discendo sentimus. Pueri legendo, audiendo, interrogando discunt. Horum poetarum filiæ cupidissimæ sunt discendi; inter ludendum magistrum sæpe interrogant. Tu librum de bene beatē-que vivendo scribebas. Liber de bene beate-que vivendo a te scribebatur. Illi exsules mæstissimi sunt: filii eorum ludendi sunt cupidiores; ego eos monebo (99). Non vivere bonum est, sed bene vivere. Puellæ, multa interrogandi⁶ cupidæ estis. Illi Socratem et discipulos ejus vituperaverint. Socrates et discipuli ejus ab illis vituperabuntur. Regina nostræ milites peritissimi sunt pugnandi. Facile est hæc bona vituperare; bene vivere est difficillimum. Milites ad pugnandum nati sunt. Filia nostra cupidissima fuit vobiscum ludendi; caput ejus coronâ floreâ ornavi-

* Be careful to make the Demonstrative agree with the right substantive.

† *i.e.* 'of him' (30). The English Possessive cases, *his, her, its, their*, have often to be translated by the *Genitives* of '*is*,' or '*ille*,' ejus, eorum; illius, illorum, etc. Compare 173.

H. L. B, G.]

Exercise 19—continued.

mus. Hæc facilia sunt: illud erit difficilius. Matrem tuam amamus; ea nobiscum sæpe ludit. Sine nobis venire non poteritis. Tecum cantare volui. Filii mei sub hac arbore mecum sedere amabant. Hujus arboris umbra a filiis meis amabatur. Alitur vitium vivit-que tegendo.

LESSON 20.

The Gerundive. Gerundive Attraction.

(*Dative of the Agent.*)

128. The *Gerundive* (often called '*the Participle in -dus*') is a Verbal Adjective, declined like *bonus*.

Like the Gerund, it is formed from the Present Stem. Thus, ama-ndus, ama-nda, ama-ndum (121).

129. The Gerundive is used to express *duty*, *meetness*, or *necessity*; what *must* or *should* be done, what *is to be* or *ought to be done*. It must be carefully distinguished from the Present Infinitive Passive (111).

130. The Gerundive is variously constructed as follows:—

- (1) Its *Neuter Nominative* forms an Impersonal Verb with *est*.

This construction is limited to

- (a) Intransitive Verbs.
- (b) Transitive Verbs used *Intransitively*.*
- (c) Verbs which govern *Gen. Dat.* or *Abl.*

- (2) It is used as an Adjective *in agreement* with its Substantive; because the Neuter Nominative of a *Transitive Gerund* is not found *Impersonally* governing an Accusative.†

* *i.e.* without an Acc. of the Object *expressed*. An Object may be implied, though it need not always be expressed. Thus, aliquid edis, *you eat something* (Trans.); but, edendum est, *one must eat* (Intrans.).

† Except in old writers.

- (3) It is used in *Attraction*,* instead of Oblique Cases of the Transitive Gerund (5). That is to say, the Substantive, *instead* of being in the *Accusative*, is *drawn into* the case in which the *Gerund* would have stood, if used; while the *Gerundive* is made to agree with the Substantive in Gender and Number.

EXAMPLES.

- (1) Pugnandum est, *one must fight*; (b) bibendum est, *one must drink*; (c) miserendum est pauperum (*gen.*), *one must pity the poor*; obtemperandum est legibus (*dat.*), *one must obey the laws*; utendum est ætate (*abl.*), *one must use one's time*.

- (2) Virtus est colenda, *virtue is* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(meet) to be} \\ \text{ought to be} \\ \text{should be} \end{array} \right\}$ *cultivated*,
or, we $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{must} \\ \text{should} \end{array} \right\}$ *cultivate virtue*.

[Not, colendum est virtutem.]

- (3) Consilium epistolæ scribendæ, *the intention of writing a letter*.

[Here the *Gerund* (if used) would be in the Genitive. But, instead of using the Gerund with the Acc. (scribendi epistolam), we put *epistolæ* in the Genitive *by Attraction*, and then make the *Gerundive* agree with it.]

131. The Gerundive Attraction is to be *preferred* to the use of the Gerund with the Accusative; except in the case of *Neuter Pronouns* and *Adjectives*, when a difficulty might arise in distinguishing the Gender, (76, 123); e.g. '*illius audiendi*' might be either 'of hearing that *person*,' or 'of hearing that *thing*.'

* From the Prep. *ad*, 'to,' and *traho*, 'I draw.'

132. The Gerundive is *always* to be used with *Prepositions* governing the Accusative or Ablative (134).

133. The *Agent*, or *Person by whom* a thing is to be done, is usually put in the *Dative* with the Gerundive. Thus, *bibendum est mihi*, *I must drink*; *virtus nobis colenda est*, *virtue is to be cultivated by us*. But see 245.

134. Summary of 130-132.

English.	Latin.	NOT
1. <i>We must cultivate virtue, or, virtue is to be cultivated,</i>	virtus colenda est	colendum est virtutem.
2. <i>For guarding (or to guard) the gate (compare 122),</i>	ad custodiendam portam	ad custodiendum portam.
3. <i>Desirous of waging war,</i>	cupidus belli gerendi	cupidus bellum gerendi.
4. <i>Suitable for waging war,</i>	aptus bello gerendo	aptus bellum gerendo.
5. <i>In waging war,</i>	in bello gerendo	in bellum gerendo.

Of course the same rules apply to the Plural Number, and to all Prepositions included in 122, 1, 4.

EXERCISE 20.

135.

art,
careless,
choose,
despise,
discern,
establish (peace),
fond,
for the sake of,
found,
place,
salute,
settler,
town,
wage,

Vocabulary 20.

ars,
negligens,
eligo, eleg-
sperno, sprēv-
cerno, crēv-
concilio, conciliāv-
studiosus, a, um.
causā (with gen.)
condo, condid-
lōcus,
salūto, salutāv-
cōlōnus,
oppidum,
gēro, gess-

artI-
negligent-
elig-ēre.
spern-ēre.
cern-ēre.
conciliā-re.

cond-ēre.
locO-
salutā-re.
colōnO-
oppidO-
ger-ēre.

Exercise 20—continued.

legendis bene scribere discimus. Turpiissimum fuerit reginam non salutavisse. Milites aquæ bibendæ non sunt studiosi. Consilium tuum totius urbis videndæ laudavero. Viam vitandam tibi monstrabimus. Colonus ille canem metuendum habebat. Judex ille in judicando erat severissimus. Puer ille dabat operam discendo (122, 3). Pater meus librum de morte contemnenda scripsit. Milites e castris reginæ salutandæ causa venient.

LESSON 21.

The Supines. Eo.

(Nē—quidem.)

137. There are two *Supines* (108), the one ending in *-um*, the other in *-û*. They are sparingly used, and are important chiefly on account of the words derived from them.

138. The Supines are formed from the Supine Stem (*L. P.* § 48, note 2, B).

The following Table shows the Supine Stems of the Model Verbs:—

1st Conj.	A-verbs,	amo.	Supine Stem,	amâT-
2nd „	E-verbs,	moneo.	„ „	moniT-
3rd „	Conj. verbs,	rego.	„ „	recT-
„ „	U-verbs,	acuo.	„ „	acûT-
4th „	I-verbs,	audio.	„ „	audiT-

Thus, amât-um, monît-um; amât-u, monît-u, etc. (*L. P.* § 47). But this 't' is often changed into s.

Obs. Many Verbs have no Supine.

139. The Supine in *-um* is an Accusative of a *Verb-Noun* of the fourth Declension (*L. P.* § 70, B).

It is used after *Verbs of Motion*, to express *design* or *purpose*; and it takes the same case as the Verb to which it belongs (109). Thus, Mittit legātos *petitum* pacem, He *sends ambassadors to-sue-for peace*.

140. The Supine in *-u** is an Ablative of a Verb-Noun of the fourth Declension.

It is used as an *Ablative of Respect* (*L. P.* § 141) with certain Adjectives.† Thus,

Illud turpe est dictu, { (a) *That (thing) is disgraceful in (respect of) the saying.*
(b) *That is disgraceful to be said.*
(c) *That is disgraceful to say.*

Our English Idiom rather prefers (c).

141. 'Eo,' *I go* (*Perf.* īvi, *Sup.* itum), follows the fourth Conjugation, with some irregularities (*L. P.* § 80).

It forms its Present, Imperfect, and Fut.-Simple Indicative as follows:—

		1	2	3		1	2	3
Present	Sing.	eo	is	it	Plur.	imus	itis	eunt
Imperfect	„	ibam	ibas	ibat	„	ibāmus	ibātis	ibant
Fut.-Simple	„	ibo	ibis	ibit	„	ibimus	ibitis	ibunt

[For remaining Tenses see Appendix, XX, E.]

142. 'Not' with 'even' in a sentence is *nē—quidem*. Thus, *Not even a friend*, *nē amicus quidem*. (*Not nē quidem amicus*.) The word to which the 'even' belongs, *i.e.*, the *emphatic word*, must always stand *between* the '*nē*.' and the '*quidem*.'

* Sometimes called the *Passive Supine*. Both Supines are, however, really Active. By some the Supine in *-u* is referred to the *Locative* (261).

† *E.g.*, *difficilis*, *fācilis*, *foedus*, *honestus*, *incrēdibilis*, *jucundus*, *mirābilis*, *turpis*, etc.

EXERCISE 21.

143.

Vocabulary 21.

increase,	augeo,	aux-	augere.	—
orator,	orator,		orator.	—
send,	mitto,	mis-	mittere.	
suitable,	idoneus, a, um.			
useless,	inutilis, a.			
style,	elégantia,		elegantia-	

Supines—dictum, to say; electum, to choose; factum, to do; gustatum, to taste; hibernatum, to winter; inventum, to find; lusum, to play; tactum, to touch; venatum, to hunt, or (as we say) 'a-hunting.'

144. I am coming into the city to choose a wife. We are going a-hunting. The general will send the soldiers into the city to winter. The soldiers will be sent by the general into the city to winter. Those farmers had gone with (their) dogs to hunt. This is disgraceful to do (140). That poet's son was going into the farmer's meadow to play. These boys are skilled in writing letters. We must shut the gate of the city. We must not despise even slaves. Not even you are to be praised.

In pratum lusum ibimus. Illud factu difficile est. Hoc inventu difficillimum fuit. Poetæ fabula jucunda est auditu. Bonorum virtutes a bonis laudandæ sunt. Nihil agendo male agere discimus. Hic locus oppido condendo non erit idoneus. Regina oratores pacis inter cives conciliandæ causa ad nos mittet. Rivi illius aqua acerba est gustatu. In silvas tecum venatum ibo. Leo tactu est asperimus. Ne aqua quidem huic ægro bibenda est. Ne isti quidem servi onera graviora portare possunt. Regina ad imperatorem de portis custodiendis scripsit. In colendis virtutibus virtutem cernere possumus. In colendis virtutibus virtus cerni potest. Illud dictu incredibile fuit. Ad aliquid agendum nati sumus. Videre est credere. Dicendi* elegantiam legendis oratoribus et poetis augere volumus. Hic puer magistris interrogandis multa didicit. Milites ab imperatore ad urbem custodiendam mittentur. Ne illud quidem dictu incredibile fuerit. Discendum est si vis docere.

* 'In speaking.' Compare the use of *peritus*, 'skilled in' (122).

LESSON 22.

The Participles. Periphrastic Conjugation.

145. The *Participles** (108) are Verbal Adjectives. They resemble Adjectives in having Inflexions for case, gender, and number; and they resemble Verbs in retaining the notion of *time*, and in governing the same case as the Verb to which they belong.

146. The Participles are formed as follows:—

Active	<i>Present</i> , from the Present Stem, ending in -ns (like <i>ingens</i>).
	<i>Future</i> , „ Supine Stem, „ -ūrus (like <i>bonus</i>).
Passive	<i>Perfect</i> , from the Supine Stem, ending in -us (like <i>bonus</i>).
	<i>Gerundive</i> „ Present Stem, „ -ndus (like <i>bonus</i>).

Thus, ama-ns, reg-ens; amāt-ūrus, rect-ūrus (Active).
amāt-us, a, um; reg-endus, a, um (Passive).

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Past or Perfect.</i>	<i>Gerundive.</i>
1st Conj.	ans	urus, a, um.	us, a, um.	andus, a, um.
2nd „	ens	„ „ „	„ „ „	endus, „ „
3rd „	ens	„ „ „	„ „ „	endus, „ „
4th „	iens	„ „ „	„ „ „	iendus, „ „

Obs. There is no Perfect Participle Active (200).

147. The Participle in -ns denotes action going on, or in progress, like the English Participle in -ing; as, amans, *loving*. It must be carefully distinguished from the *Gerund*, which is a *Noun* (Lesson 19).

The Participle in -urus denotes action going to take place at a future time; as, moniturus, *going to advise*, *about to advise*, *intending to advise*.†

The Participle in -us denotes action past and complete; as, amātus, *loved*, or *having been loved*; sometimes 'being loved' (i.e. having been).

* From *pars*, 'a part,' and *capio*, 'I take;' because they take part of the properties of Adjectives, and part of the properties of Verbs.

† Sometimes, 'ready to advise,' or 'likely to advise;' or, expressing purpose, 'to advise.' *Obs.* 'Going' in such a case expresses intention only, not motion. Thus, 'They are going (= intending) to revolt.'

The *Gerundive* has already been noticed (Lesson 20).

Obs. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives; as, *doctus, negligens, peritus*, etc. Others again are used as Substantives; as, *amans, sapiens*, etc. The Participle in *-urus* is very rarely so used.

148. The tenses of the Verb *sum* (117) may be combined with any of the Participles, *except* the Participle in *-ns*.

When combined with the Participle in *-urus*, they form a complete Active Conjugation, called the *Periphrastic** Conjugation (*L. P.* § 64). Thus,

Scripturus†	{	sum, <i>I am about to write.</i>
		eram, <i>I was about to write.</i>
		ero, <i>I shall be about to write.</i> And so on.

They may also be combined with the *Gerundive*, to form a Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (Lesson 20).

149. The Verb *sum* is not combined with the Active Present Participle unless the Participle is used either as an *Adjective* or as a *Substantive* (147, *Obs.*). Thus, *I am loving*; *I was loving*, are in Latin, *amo*; *amābam*; *not, amans sum, amans eram* (51).

150. The *Future Infinitive Active* is made up of 'esse,' *to be*, and the Participle in *-urus* (146).

The *Future Infinitive Passive* is made up of *iri*‡ and the *Supine in -um* (Questions on Syntax, 44).

The *Perfect Infinitive Passive* is made up of 'esse' and the Perfect Participle in *-us* (146). Thus,

	<i>Pres. and Imperf.</i>	<i>Perf. and Pluperf.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Active,</i>	amā-re	amav-is-se	amāt-ūrus esse
<i>Passive,</i>	amā-ri	amāt-us esse	amāt-um iri‡

* From the Greek περι-φράζειν, 'to use circumlocution,' 'speak circuitously.'

† *Scripturā*, if the Nominative is *Feminine*.

‡ Pres. Inf. of the Passive Impersonal *itur* (from *eo*), 'there-is-a-going,' *amātum*, 'to love' (139). The *Supine* may govern an Accusative; it cannot agree with it.

Obs. In the Future Infinitive Passive the *Supine* is unchanged, whatever be the Gender or Number of the Substantive. In all other Compound Tenses the *Participles* must be in agreement with their Substantives (24).

EXERCISE 22.

151.

Vocabulary 22.

[Henceforth the Infinitive only will be given, with the Perfect and Supine Stems.]

<i>bind,</i>	<i>vincire,</i>	<i>vinx-</i>	<i>vinct-</i>
<i>catch,</i>	<i>capere,</i>	<i>cēp-</i>	<i>capt-</i>
<i>conquer,</i>	<i>vincere,</i>	<i>vic-</i>	<i>vict-</i>
<i>depart,</i>	<i>abire,</i>	<i>abiv-*</i>	<i>abīt-</i>
<i>fill,</i>	<i>implere,</i>	<i>implēv-</i>	<i>implēt-</i>
<i>fortify,</i>	<i>munire,</i>	<i>muniv-</i>	<i>munīt-</i>
<i>kill,</i>	<i>interficere,</i>	<i>interfēc-</i>	<i>interfect-</i>
<i>lose,</i>	{ <i>amittere,</i> †	<i>amis-</i>	<i>amiss-</i>
	{ <i>perdere,</i>	<i>perdīd-</i>	<i>perdīt-</i>
<i>ready,</i>	<i>paratus, a, um.</i>		
<i>return,</i>	<i>redire,</i>	<i>rediv-*</i>	<i>redīt-</i>
<i>walk,</i>	<i>ambulare,</i>	<i>ambulāv-</i>	<i>ambulāt-</i>
<i>wear out,</i>	<i>deterere,</i>	<i>detriv-</i>	<i>detrīt-</i>

152. Binding. About to bind. Bound. To be bound. Having been caught. About to depart. Lost. Worn out. I saw the slave carrying a heavy burden. The legions are about to depart. The soldiers were standing intending to guard the gate. The enemy having been conquered are suing-for‡ peace. Peace is sued for by the conquered enemy. We will go to salute (139) the departing legions. Our (men) will drive the flying enemy. He is said to be intending-to-return. That soldier is said to have been wounded with the weapons of the enemy. My sisters are going-to-walk in the garden. They have gone into the garden for the sake of walking (147). The soldiers were fortifying the camp. The camp was being fortified by the legions. The camp is said to

* The compounds of *eo* (141) generally drop 'v' in tenses formed from the Perfect Stem. Thus, *redxi, redieram*, for *redivi, rediveram*, etc. (*L. P.* § 59, note).

† See Synonymes.

‡ 'Sue-for' is one word. The 'for' is not a sign of the Dative. For explanation see Lesson 52.

Exercise 22—continued.

have been fortified. The soldiers were going to kill the exile.* My sons were about to catch (some) fish; but the farmer ordered them to depart. We are ready for flying (122, 1). The wounded soldiers returned into the camp. The soldiers were abusing (their) worn-out swords. The worn-out swords were being abused by the soldiers. *The past*³ cannot be recalled. I heard the ambassadors suing-for peace. The boys were about to write letters. Boys are often careless in writing letters. The shepherd was seeking his lost sheep.

Dormientes nihil audiunt. Boni sapientesque non sunt pellendi. Flores ab amantibus sæpe mittuntur. Puerum illum puellas timidas terrentem vidi. Ambulandum est. Ambulandi studiosi estis. Puellas ambulantes videbimus. Puellæ, ambulaturæ eratis. Latro catena vinctus custoditur. Iudices iusti a sapientibus laudabuntur. Voces militum imperatorem salutantium audiri possunt. Aperientæ sunt portæ. Servus portam clausurus erit. Legiones abituræ salutandæ sunt. Servos pocula implentes vidimus. Latrones inter bibendum interficientur. Gloria pugnantes vincere major erit. Puella caput corona cingere dicitur. Puella caput corona ornavisse dicebatur (83). Puellæ caput corona cinctum esse dicebatur. Enses detriti renovari non possunt.

LESSON 23.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Passive.**Deponents.**

153. The Perfect Passive is made up of the Auxiliary Verb *sum*† and the Perfect Participle Passive. Thus, *amātus sum*, *I have been loved*.

The Pluperfect is formed in the same way with *eram*.‡ Thus, *amātus eram*, *I had been loved*.

The Participle must always agree in Gender and

* Translate in two ways. See note, p. 57.

† Sometimes, *fui*.

‡ Sometimes, *fueram*.

Number with the Subject of the Verb (23). Thus, *servus liberatus est*; *portæ clausæ erant*; *castra munita sunt*.

154. The Aorist, or Perfect Indefinite, is formed like the Perfect. (Compare 93.) Thus, *hostes victi sunt*, may be either, *The enemy have been conquered* (Perf.), or, *The enemy were conquered* (Aor.).

Obs. 'Vincebantur' would mean *were being conquered*.

155. The English Passive often misleads beginners, because the Auxiliary Verb 'to be' is used with the Participle to describe

- (a) What is actually taking place.
- (b) What habitually or commonly takes place.
- (c) What has already taken place.

RULE.—The Latin Present must be used for (a) and (b); the Perfect for (c); *i.e.* the Perfect must be used when 'is' = *has been*.

Thus, (a) *Laudor ab omnibus*, *I am* (now being) *praised by all*.

(b) *Ignes aquâ exstinguuntur*, *Fires are*

{	commonly	}	extin-
			guished with water.

(c) *Ignis exstinctus est*, *The fire is extinguished* * (*i.e.* has been and is extinguished, once for all).

Care must be taken not to confound Passive Verbs with the Perfects and Pluperfects of certain English Intransitive Verbs formed with 'am,' 'was' (93).

156. Deponent Verbs are Passive in *form*, but Active in *meaning*. Some are Transitive, others Intransitive; as, *Imitor*, *I imitate*; *vāgor*, *I wander*.

Deponents are conjugated like Passives, *with the addition of Gerunds, Supines, and all the four Participles. Only Transitive Deponents, however, have the Gerundive and the Supine in -u* (L. P. § 62).

[For Deponents of the 3rd Conj. in *-ior*, see Appendix, XXI. L. P. § 63.]

* Or, as an Aorist, 'was extinguished.' But 'extinguitur' would be 'is being extinguished (now).'

Semi-Deponents have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive Form; as, *audeo, I dare*. Perf. *ausus sum* (*L. P.* § 73).

157. Deponents and Semi-Deponents only have a *Perfect Participle with Active sense*. Thus, *locūtus, having spoken*; *ausus, having dared*. But we could not say, *amātus, having loved*, because there is no Deponent Verb meaning 'to love.' On the other hand, we could not say, *locūtus, having been spoken*, because there is no *active* form of this Verb in use.

Hence, *Deponents cannot and must not be used as Passives*. The safest plan will be to *invert* the expression. Thus, instead of 'the master *is followed* by his dog,' put 'the dog *follows* his master' (84).

EXERCISE 23.

158. *Vocabulary* 23.

<i>am accustomed,</i>	<i>soleo,</i>	(<i>solītus sum</i>).
<i>deserve,</i>	<i>mēreri,</i>	<i>mērit-</i>
<i>die,</i>	<i>mōri,</i>	(<i>mortuus sum</i>).
<i>endeavour,</i>	<i>conāri,</i>	<i>conāt-</i>
<i>exhort,</i>	<i>hortāri</i>	<i>hortāt-</i>
<i>follow,</i>	<i>sēqui,</i>	<i>secūt-</i>
<i>imitate,</i>	<i>īmītāri,</i>	<i>īmītāt-</i>
<i>lie,</i>	<i>mentīri,</i>	<i>mentīt-</i>
<i>promise,</i>	<i>pollicēri,</i>	<i>pollicīt-</i>
<i>set out,</i>		
<i>start,</i> }	<i>proficisci,</i>	<i>profect-</i>
<i>wander,</i>	<i>vāgāri,</i>	<i>vagāt-</i>

[When more than one translation of the Perfect Passive form is possible both should be given.]

159. The slaves have been freed. The gates had been opened. The stag was torn by the dogs. Your letters have been received by us. Fishes are caught with hooks. Supper is prepared. The sheep were followed by the shepherd. Having exhorted the soldiers, the general departed. O Cæsar, (men) about to die salute thee. We saw the general exhorting (his) soldiers. The cavalry

Exercise 23—continued.

had followed the flying enemy. The judge's daughters were frightened by the shouts of the freed slaves. All must die (130). We have heard the voices of the dying. The exiles were wandering through the city. We should imitate the good and wise. The master is going to exhort the boys. The soldiers will follow the general. We have followed thee. *You* followed the judge into the garden. We deserved better things. Lying is disgraceful. *We* have been accustomed to speak *the truth* (true things). The boys will be exhorted by the master.

Domum sum ædificaturus. Domus ædificata est. Domus ædificata erat. Domus ædificatur. Domus ædificabatur. Pisces capti sunt. Exsul a militibus interfectus est. Narrata est fabula. Scripta erat epistola. Urbes captæ sunt. Vincor. Victus sum. Vincar. Victus ero. Imperator exercitum ducit. Exercitus e castris ducitur. Exercitus ad pugnam ductus est. Exercitus ab imperatore ducebatur. Milites urbem capere conati redierunt. Servi portas aperire conabantur. Cervus canes eludere solitus erat. Hi agricolæ venandi sunt studiosissimi. Venaturi sunt hodie. Vulpem eos eludere conantem videbimus. Heri profectus est. Servi catenis vinciebantur. Servi catenis vincti sunt. Servi catenis vincti ducebantur. Hi pueri non sunt mentituri. Eorum frater *multa mentitus esse*⁵ dicitur. Heri profectus esse dicebaris. Legiones hodie profecturæ erant. Agricolæ in silvas nostras venatum eunt. Hostes *multa polliciti sunt*.⁵ Pollicitus meliora mentiris. Mecum in silvis imitabere Pana canendo. Equitatus finem sequendi fecit. Illud polliceri non possumus. Venator sequitur fugientia, capta relinquit. Pater ejus et mater *mortui* sunt (23, *Obs.*). Illi salutantium voces contemnere soliti esse dicuntur. Nonne picæ hominis vocem imitantur? Vir sapiens ad moriendum semper paratus erit. Nil cupientium castra peto. Idem gloriabitur. Brutus in liberandâ patriâ interfectus esse dicitur.

LESSON 24.

The Accusative and Infinitive.

160. The Subject of a Finite Verb stands in the *Nominative* (47).

The Subject of an *Infinitive* is put in the *Accusative*.

The Infinitive may be either (1) the *Subject*, or (2) the *Object* of another Verb (112, 116).

Such sentences in English are often introduced by the Conjunction '*that*.' In Latin no Conjunction is expressed, but the "*Accusative and Infinitive Construction*" is employed. Thus,

(1) *Manifestum est exsules fugere*, (*It is clear that the exiles are flying*.*

(2) *Audimus exsules fugisse*, *We hear that † the exiles have fled*.

The clause '*exsules fugere*' (Acc. and Inf.) is in (1) the *Subject* (Nom.) of the Verb *est*; in (2) it is the *Object* (Acc.) after the Verb *audimus*.

Obs. '*That*' is not always expressed in English. Thus, *He said he would come*, i.e., *that he would come*.

161. The Accusative and Infinitive as *Subject* is found with *est*, Impersonal Verbs, and such expressions as, *it is agreed, it is clear, it is probable, it is true*, etc.

The Accusative and Infinitive as *Object* follows Verbs of *believing, declaring, feeling, hearing, knowing, perceiving, thinking*; with Verbs of *ordering and wishing*.

RULE.—To turn such sentences into Latin,

1. Omit '*that*.'

2. Turn the English *Nominative* into the Latin *Accusative*.

3. Turn the English Verb into the Latin *Infinitive* of the same tense.

* Literally, '*That-the-exiles-are-flying is clear*.'

† i.e. '*the fact that*.'

162. 'Shall' and 'will,' after a past tense, become 'should' and 'would.' Thus,

He says that the queen will come, Dicit reginam venturam esse.

He said that the queen would come, Dixit reginam venturam esse.

The Future Infinitive must be used alike in each case.

[The same, of course, holds good of the Passive Voice. But see L. P. § 69, B.]

EXERCISE 24. -

163. Vocabulary 24.

<i>believe,</i>	crēdere,	crēdīd-	crēdīt-
<i>clear,</i>	manifestus, a, um.		
<i>obtain,</i>	ādīpisci,	adept-	
<i>order,</i>	jūbere,	juss-	juss-
<i>probable,</i>	verisimilis, e.		
<i>speak,</i>	lōqui.	locūt-	
<i>think,</i>	existimāre,	existimāv-	existimāt-
<i>to-morrow,</i>	cras.		
<i>true,</i>	vērus, a, um.		

[Remember that *amare, amari*, are both Present and Imperfect (110); *amavisse, amatus esse*, both Perfect and Pluperfect.]

164. I see that you are happy. It is clear that this general is most skilful in waging war. We know that lying is disgraceful. We heard that you had ordered the exiles to depart. We believe that Rome was founded by Romulus. It is probable that the queen will come into the city. The general believes the soldiers will *put* the enemy *to flight*. The general believes that the enemy will be put to flight by our soldiers (150). It is true that friendship cannot exist, except between the good. I know that my daughter has been most happy. I hear you have promised these things. It was clear that he was going to speak. The legions were preparing to start. It is probable that you will catch fish in the river. The soldiers believe the city will be taken. They believed that the city would be taken. I hear that you have caught many fish to-day. I hear that many fish have been caught by you. I believe that many fish will be caught. I hope the queen will come. We hope that soldiers will be sent to guard the city (134, 2). I hope *to send*⁶ a letter.

Exercise 24—continued.

We hope to set out to-morrow. You have promised to *do*⁶ this. He said that the slave would shut the gate. He said the gate would be shut by the slave.

Verum est hunc iudicem in iudicando severum esse. Credimus te esse doctissimum. Spero illum locum tutum fore. Imperator nihil temere agendum existimabat. Credimus mundum Dei providentia regi. Jussus es abire. Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores. Filium parentes non amare³² turpe est. Imperatorem proficisci optimum visum est. Audimus legatos, omnia adeptos, rediisse. Verisimile est eum cras locuturum esse. Sperabamus legiones missum iri. Pollicebamini vos venturos esse. Scimus agricolas venaturos esse. Dicebatis agricolas venaturos esse. Dixisti agricolas venatum abiisse. Dixisti agricolas venatum abituros esse. Existimavimus servos istos liberandos esse. Dixit pastores ovibus sequendis operam dare. Ille pastor oves amissas secutus esse dicebatur. Dicit reginam mortuam esse. Dixit reginam mortuam esse. Dicit exsules cras interfectum iri. Hominem bene beateque vivere³² non est facile.

LESSON 25.

The Relative Pronoun. Copulative Verbs.

165. The Relative Pronoun,* qui, quæ, quod, *who*, *which* (*that*, *as*), is put in the same *Gender*, *Number*, and *Person* as its Antecedent.

[For the Inflection of the Relative see Appendix, XVI, F, and 105.]

166. The Antecedent may be a Substantive, or a Pronoun, or a word used substantively (76).

The regular Antecedent Pronoun to *qui* is *is*, *ea*, *id*.

* From *relātum*, Sup. of *re-ferre*, 'to carry back,' 'refer.' The Relative refers to some Noun or Pronoun already named, which is called the *Antecedent* (*the going-before noun*), from *ante-cedo*, 'I go before.' The use of the Relative is to avoid the repetition of the Antecedent.

But it is often omitted. Thus, *qui nos amant*, *those-who love us* (for *ii qui*).*

167. The Case of the Relative depends entirely on the Verb (or other governing word) in its own clause.

The Relative *may* be in the same case as its Antecedent; *but the case of the Antecedent has nothing to do with the case of the Relative.*

168. To find the case of the Relative, ask yourself what case the *Antecedent* would stand in *if it were put in the Relative clause*.† The answer will give you the case of the Relative required.

EXAMPLES.

- (1) *Ii sunt amandi qui nos amant.*
Those (persons) are to be loved who love us.
- (2) *Amisi epistolam quam ad me scripsisti.*
I have lost the letter (which) you wrote to me.
- (3) *Exsules mortui sunt de quibus scripsisti.*
The exiles are dead about whom you wrote.

In (1) *qui* is Nom. to *amant*. You would say, *ii nos amant*.

In (2), *scripsisti* being a *Transitive Verb*, you would say '*scripsisti epistolam*.'

In (3) the Prep. *de* governs the Abl., and you would say, *scripsisti de exsulibus*.

Obs. 1. The Relative is *never* omitted in Latin as in English (Example 2).

Obs. 2. The Relative may be of any *Person*, as, (tu) *qui stas*, *thou who standest*; (nos) *qui stamus*, *we who stand*, etc.

* Sometimes '*what*' in English stands for '*that which*,' '*those things which*.' Thus, '*What* they heard startled them.' 'I heard a part of *what* was said.' This '*what*' must be carefully distinguished from the Interrogative '*what?*' (187).

† "The clause in which the Relative stands is called the Relative clause."

169. *Copulative Verbs* follow the rule for the Verb *sum* (117). Such are *I appear, am born, am called, am said, am thought, seem, etc.* (*L. P.* § 87, and page 176).

[Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming*;
Passives of *calling, making, deeming*.]

EXERCISE 25.

170.

Vocabulary 25.

<i>am born,</i>	<i>nascor,</i>	(<i>natus sum</i>).	
<i>animal,</i>	<i>animal,</i>		<i>animāli.</i>
<i>behold,</i>	<i>aspicere,</i>	<i>aspe-</i>	<i>aspect-</i>
<i>heart,</i>	<i>cor,</i>		<i>cord-</i>
<i>nobody, }</i>	<i>nemo,*</i>		<i>nēmīn-</i>
<i>no one, }</i>			
<i>seem,</i>	<i>videor (see video).</i>		
<i>yacht,</i>	<i>phāsēlus,</i>		<i>phasēlo-</i>

171. No animals which have blood, can be without a heart. I was reading the letter which you had sent to me. Yonder yacht, which you see, is very swift. (Those) who advise these things, err. (The woman) who is sitting under yonder tree is the queen. I do not see the tree under which we used to sit. We will go into the city, the gates of which the soldiers are guarding. I who used to lead this army, am blind. The slave, to whom you showed the way, was avoiding (his) master. We who salute thee are about to die. We cannot always praise those whom we love. No one is born wise. Many, who are called philosophers, are fools. *You (sing.)* who are thought to have erred, will seem most wise. We should endeavour to love those with whom† we must live. The citizens, whose sons have been ordered to start with the soldiers, seem very sad. No one's daughter is thought more beautiful.

* *Nemo* borrows from *nullus*, Gen. *nullius* and Abl. *nullo*. Hence the lines,

'From 'nemo' let me never see
Nēmīnis or *nēmīnē*.'

† *quibuscum* (105, note).

Exercise 25—continued.

Eos laudamus quorum virtutes in vitiis vitandis asperimus. Pater tuus, quem nos monuimus, in eligendo phaselo negligentior fuisse videtur (99). Qui ex urbe venandi causa venturi sunt, sub noctem læti redibunt. Urbs in qua vivimus pulcherrima est. Inter dormiendum multa dictu mirabilia videmus, quæ narrare non possumus. Quæ utilia sunt non semper sunt honesta. Colenda est virtus, qua sine* bene beateque vivere non possumus. Qui sæpe pugnavit vulnera non metuet. Arma quæ nostri milites gerunt corporibus tegendis apta sunt. Scimus arma, quæ a militibus nostris gerantur, corporibus tegendis apta esse. Credimus hanc urbem, quam aspicitis, a legionibus nostris captum iri. Vult consul fieri. Videmus exsulum bona dividi. Audimus exsulum bona divisa esse. Quæ nimis apparent retia vitat avis. Solent diu cogitare, qui magna volunt agere.

LESSON 26.

The Reflexive Pronouns. Ipse, idem.

172. *Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, refers back†* to the Subject (or Nominative) of the principal Verb, if it is of the *third* person.

The '*-self*' is not always expressed in English (173, Examples).

[For the Inflection of *sui* see Appendix, XVI.]

173. When *he, she, it, they*, stand for *the same* person (or thing) as the Subject of the sentence, *sui, sibi, se*, must be used.

Similarly, *his, her, its, their*, must be translated by *suus* in agreement.

But if *he, she*, etc. stand for a *different* person or thing from the Subject of the sentence, a case of *is* or *ille* must be used; and *his, her*, etc. must be translated by *ejus, illius; eorum, illorum* (p. 49, note).

* *i.e., sine qua.* The Relative is always placed as near its Antecedent as possible.

† Hence called *Reflexive*; from *re-flecto*, 'I bend back.'

EXAMPLES. A. (1) Imperator dicit *se* venturum esse, *the general says that he will come (referring to himself).*

(2) Imperator dicit *eum* venturum esse, *the general says that he (i.e. somebody else) will come.*

B. (1) Magister filium *suum* docebat, *the master was teaching his (own) son.*

(2) Magister filium *eius* docebat, *the master was teaching his (somebody else's) son.*

C. (1) Exsules filios *suos secum** ducebant, *the exiles were taking their (own) sons with them(selves).*

(2) Exsules *eorum* filios cum *iis* ducebant, *the exiles were taking the sons of other people aforesaid in company with the aforesaid people (126).*

Roughly speaking, *sui, suus*, may be used where 'self' or 'own' can be added in English. But *sui* and its cases can never, like *ipse*, agree with a Substantive (174).

174. 'Ipse,' *-self*, is of any Person. Thus, it is *I myself*, if the Verb is in the 1st Person; *you yourself*, if the Verb is in the 2nd Person, and so on.

Ipse may agree either with Subject or Object. Thus, Caius ipse scribit, *Caius himself is writing*; Reginam ipsam vidi, *I saw the queen herself*. (Not reginam *se*.)

'Idem,' *the same*, is declined like *is, ea, id*, with the suffix *-dem*.

'As,' *that*, after 'the same' are translated by the Relative *qui*.

[For the Inflection of these Pronouns, see Appendix, XVI.]

EXERCISE 26.

175.

Vocabulary 26.

<i>ally,</i>	<i>socius,</i>	<i>socio-</i>
<i>both—and,</i>	<i>et—et.</i>	
<i>by chance,</i>	<i>cāsu, fortē.†</i>	
<i>hand,</i>	<i>mānus,</i>	<i>manu-</i>

* Note the position of *cum* in *se-cum* (105, note).

† Ablatives of *casus*, 'an accident,' *forē*, 'chance,' used Adverbially.

Vocabulary 26—continued.

<i>live</i> (= dwell)	habitāre,	habitāv-	habitāt-
<i>not yet,</i>	nondum.		
<i>same,</i>	idem, eādem, ĭdem, Gen. <i>eiusdem</i> .		
<i>street,</i>	vicus,		vico-
<i>to each other,</i>	interse (after words implying likeness or unlikeness, etc.).		

176. The soldiers saluted *both* the queen *and* her son. The poet's daughter is said to have written this letter with her own hand. We believe that those slaves of yours have not yet carried their burdens into the city. My boys were playing in the garden with their sisters. Our queen has promised to *send*⁶ ambassadors to her allies. By chance I had gone into the judge's garden to see his roses. The exile himself says that he wishes to die. This boy says that he must write a letter. I myself taught him to write well. This is the same *as* that (174). I came, I saw, I conquered. Cæsar said that he came, (and) saw, (and) conquered. We heard that he came, (and) saw, (and) conquered. The legions have been accustomed to follow their general. It is clear that the legions will follow their general, and that the enemy will be put to flight by them. We ourselves* are about to set out into the same wood. They said that they had wandered through the whole city. Their love of wandering is wonderful. The boys thought that they had baffled the master. He says he will punish them. They will endeavour to hide their fault with falsehood. I shall order my son to be punished with them. I wish him to be punished by the master. You yourself promised to come.

Milites inter bibendum fabulas multas de se et de imperatore suo narraverint. Cæcus amor sui multos perdidit. Pater meus filios suos semper docebat. Imperator milites plurimos ad eandem portam custodiendam missurus est. Hi milites ex eodem poculo bibisse dicuntur. Ii non sunt amandi qui sese† amant. Hoc ipsum fœdum dictu est.

* 'nos-met ipsi.' See Appendix, XVI.

† *Se* is often doubled into *sese*, especially if it refers to a Plural Nominative.

Exercise 26—continued.

Hujus poetæ filius sui laudandi studiosissimus esse dicitur. Ejusdem poetæ filius eum sæpe vituperat. Dixerunt easdem virtutes sibi colendas esse. Miles equum suum amisit. Equus a milite amissus est. Frater meus filias suas secum ducet. Fratris mei filiæ cum eo venient. Filios ejus videre nolo. Idem est qui semper fuit (174). Idem sumus qui semper fuimus. Eadem quæ antea locutus est. Regina cum eodem filio veniet quem heri duxit. Et orator et poeta in eodem vico habitabant. Virtus et vitium *inter se*⁷ contraria* sunt. Scimus virtutem et vitium inter se contraria esse. Frater tuus ne reginam quidem ipsam salutavit. Difficilis, facilis, jucundus, acerbus *es idem*:† nec tecum possum vivere, nec sine te. Se ipse vulneravit. Se ipsum vulneravisse dicitur.

LESSON 27.

The Subjunctive. Ut and Nē expressing Purpose.

(Consecution of Tenses.)

177. The Subjunctive Present and Imperfect, Active and Passive, are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect *Active* are formed from the Perfect Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect *Passive* are made up of the Perfect Participle, with *sim* ‡ (Subj. of *sum*) for the Perfect, and *essem* § for the Pluperfect (153).

Obs. *Sim* and *essem* are used with the Participle in *-urus* to supply the place of the Future Subjunctive Active (148).

* When an Adjective refers to more than one Substantive it is usually put in the *neuter* gender, if the Substantives are *things without life*.

† 'You are at once.' Lit. 'You the same person are.'

‡ Sometimes *fuierim*.

§ Sometimes *forem*, or *fuissem*.

178. Table of endings in the Subjunctive Mood—

		ACTIVE.					
		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
Present	1. Am-	em	es	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
	2. Mone-	am	as	at	āmus	ātis	ant
	3. { Reg- Acu- }	am	as	at	āmus	ātis	ant
	4. Audi-	am	as	at	āmus	ātis	ant
Imperf.	1. Amā-	rem	res	ret	rēmus	rētis	rent
	2. Monē-						
	4. Audi-						
	3. { Reg- Acu- }						
Perfect	1. Amāv-	erim	eris	erit	erīmus	erītis	erint
	2. Monu-						
	3. { Rex- Acu- }						
	4. Audiv-						
Pluperf.	1. Amāv-	issem	isses	isset	issēmus	issētis	issent
	2. Monu-						
	3. { Rex- Acu- }						
	4. Audiv-						

		PASSIVE.					
		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
Present	1. Am-	er	ēris(e)	ētur	ēmur	ēmīni	entur
	2. Mone-	ar	āris(e)	ātur	āmur	āmīni	antur
	3. { Reg- Acu- }	ar	āris(e)	ātur	āmur	āmīni	antur
	4. Audi-	ar	āris(e)	ātur	āmur	āmīni	antur
Imperf.	1. Amā-	rer	rēris(e)	rētur	rēmur	rēmīni	rentur
	2. Monē-						
	4. Audi-						
	3. { Reg- Acu- }						
Perfect	1. Amāt-	us, a, um	sim,	sis	sit	simus	sītis
	2. Monīt-						
	3. { Rect- Acūt-						
	4. Audit-						
Pluperf.	1. Amātus	essem	esses	esset	essēmus	essētis	essent
	2. Monītus						
	3. { Rectus Acūtus						
	4. Auditus						

179. The Tenses of the Subjunctive may be variously rendered in English; but the most common signs are the following:—

Present,	. <i>may.</i>
Imperfect,	. <i>might, should, would.</i>
Perfect,	. <i>may have.</i>
Pluperfect,	. <i>might have, should have, would have.</i>

Thus, *amem, I may love; amārer, I might be loved, etc., etc.*

Obs. The Latin Subjunctive will often have to be translated by corresponding *Indicative* tenses in English (185).

180. The Latin Subjunctive with '*ut*,' *that*, in order *that*, is often used to express *purpose* or *intention*, where in English we use the Infinitive, with the sign '*to*' (182). The Latin Infinitive is *never* used to express a *Purpose*.

When '*that*' (= *in order that*) is followed by '*not*,' or any negative word, *nē*' (*lest*) must be used; or *neve, neu*, if there is a '*nor*.'

Obs. '*Nē—quidem*,' *not even*, is not followed by the Subjunctive.

181. The Final* Conjunctions *ut, nē*, are used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *advising, asking, commanding, endeavouring, exhorting, persuading, and striving*.†

RULE—By '*ut*' translate th' Infinitive
 With *ask, command, advise, and strive*;
 But never be this rule forgot,—
 Put '*nē*' for '*ut*' when there's a '*not*.'

* i.e. 'expressing *purpose*.' From *finis*, an end, object, or purpose.

† These verbs include many verbs of *allowing, forbidding, and wishing*. But *conor, jubeo, sino veto, volo*, prefer an Infinitive (182).

EXAMPLES.—Rogo te *ut* hoc facias, *I ask you to do this.**

Rogo te *nē* hoc facias, *I ask you not to do this.*

182. The two chief rules for the *Consecution*,† or Sequence, of Tenses are—

(1) Primary Tenses follow Primary Tenses.

(2) Historic Tenses follow Historic Tenses (*L. P.* § 48).

- | | |
|--|--|
| (1) <i>The Present</i>
<i>The Futures</i> ‡
<i>The Present-Perfect</i> (with 'have') | } are followed by the <i>Present Subjunctive</i> . |
| (2) <i>The Imperfect</i>
<i>The Simple-Perfect</i> (Aorist)
<i>The Pluperfect</i> | |

EXAMPLES.

- | | | | |
|---|--|---|--|
| (1) <i>Vēnit</i>
<i>Veniet</i>
<i>Vēnerit</i>
<i>Vēnit</i> | } <i>ut portas</i>
<i>claudat</i> , | } <i>He is coming,</i>
<i>He will come,</i>
<i>He will have come,</i>
<i>He (is) has come (93)</i> | } <i>that he may</i>
<i>shut(or to shut)</i>
<i>the gates.</i> |
| (2) <i>Veniebat</i>
<i>Vēnit</i>
<i>Vēnerat</i> | | | |

Similarly (1) *Caius abī* (*abībit*, *abierit*, *abīit*), *nē portas claudat*.

(2) *Caius abībat* (*abīit*, *abierat*), *nē portas claudēret*.

EXERCISE 27.

183.

Vocabulary 27.

<i>beg,</i>	<i>orāre,</i>	<i>orāv-</i>	<i>orāt-</i>
<i>country (=fatherland),</i>	<i>patria,</i>		<i>patria-</i>
<i>neglect,</i>	<i>neglīgēre,</i>	<i>neglex-</i>	<i>neglect-</i>
<i>neither,</i>			
<i>nor,</i>	<i>neque or nec.</i> §		
<i>sell,</i>	<i>vendēre,</i>	<i>vendīd-</i>	<i>vendīt-</i>
<i>strive,</i>	<i>niti (nisus or nixus sum).</i>		

184. That father had neglected his sons that others might teach them. The orator was striving that the citizens might hear this. I had advised the slave not to fly. We will strive to do the same things. We must strive to increase our country's glory. Wars must be

* Literally, 'in order that you may do this.'

† From *consequor*, 'I follow.'

‡ See p. 32, note.

§ *Neque* is rather to be preferred before a vowel.

Exercise 27—continued.

waged that we may live without injury in peace. We asked your friend to sell his yacht. Your friend has been asked to sell his yacht. The general has begged the soldiers to defend the city. The soldiers were being warned by the general not to seek safety in flight. The wives of these men were about to go into the city. We exhorted them not to start. I have often exhorted you to imitate the good. Many praise others that (they) themselves may be praised by others. The exile returned to bury his son. You will warn the boy not to imitate the bad. He says these things that he may be thought wise. He said these things that he might not seem to have neglected his country. The slave has run into the wood to avoid his master. The boys will have been praised by the master, in order that they may be unwilling to imitate the bad. They said they should go into the city to see the queen. No one would have supposed that our army would be conquered (162). They *are* come to see the games. He warned* the settlers that the army was-at-hand. Many falsehoods are told by most people (157).

Spectatum veniunt; veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. Pugnandum est ut vivatis. Fugiendum est ne pugnes. Te sæpe oravi ut ad nos venires. Te sæpe oravi ut ad nos venias. Servum meum liberavisse. Servus tuus liberatus esset. Frater tuus amaretur. Luderetis. Lusi-
sent. Loqueremini. Viam monstraverim. Moniti simus. Amati essetis. Mentirentur. Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Hortandi sunt exsules ne in patriam redeant. Exsules hortati sumus ne in patriam redirent. Multi fugerunt ne ex urbe pellerentur. Neque hortor te nec rogo ut hoc facias. Neque hortatus eram puerum nec rogaveram ne hoc faceret. Hoc dico ne te fallere videat. Milites oravisse dicitur ut se ipsum negligerent, reginam defenderent. Manifestum est exsules rediisse ut filios suos sepeliant. Audivimus exsules rediisse ut filios suos sepelirent. Nitimini ut discatis. Milites, nitemini ut

* *Moneo* takes *Acc.* and *Infin.* when it does not mean to advise or warn us to do or not to do something.

Exercise 27—continued.

vincat. Puellæ, rogatæ estis ut in hortum veniat. Puellæ rogatæ erant ut in hortum venirent. Epistolæ acceptæ essent. Res ipsa monebat finem scribendi fieri tempus esse.

Dionysius, ne tonsori collum committeret, filias suas tondere docuit. Ita regiæ virgines patris barbam et capillum tondebant. Et tamen ab his ipsis postea ferrum removit; instituit-que ut candentibus juglandium putaminibus barbam et capillum adurerent.

LESSON 28.

The Subjunctive—continued. Ut expressing a Consequence.

(*Quis, quæ, quid.*)

185. (1) The Latin Subjunctive is used with 'ut,' 'that' (after *so, such, of such a kind*, etc.), to express a *consequence* or a *result*, where we in English use the *Indicative*.

'Ut' used in this sense is called "*ut Consecutive*."

(2) Sometimes an *English Infinitive* is used to express a consequence. *The Latin Infinitive is never so used.*

(3) In *Negative Clauses* 'ut . . . non' (*that—not*) is used, followed by the Subjunctive.

Obs. 'Nē' expresses *purpose* only; never a consequence (180).

EXAMPLES. (1) Puella ita timida est ut umbras metuat, *The girl is so timid that she fears shadows.*

(2) Non sum tam durus ut hoc faciam, *I am not so hard-hearted as to do this.*

(3) Puer est tam durus ut non fleat, *The boy is so hard-hearted that he does not weep.*

186. The rules for the Consecution of Tenses are the same as those given in 182.

187. The Interrogative * Pronoun, *Quis, quæ, quid, who? what?* † is used as a *Substantive*. It is declined like the Relative, except that it has *Neuter* Nom. and Acc. '*quid*' (Appendix, XVI, G).

There is an *Adjectival* form, *qui, quæ, quod*, declined exactly like the Relative. Thus, *quis hoc fecit? who did this? quid vides? what do you see?* But, *qui vir hæc laudat? what man praises these things?*

EXERCISE 28.

188.

Vocabulary 28.

<i>as to</i> (after ' <i>so</i> ,' ' <i>such</i> '),	<i>ut</i> (with Subj.).		
<i>barren</i> ,	<i>stérilis</i> , e.		
<i>bear</i> ,	<i>ferre</i> ,	túl-	lät-
<i>cold</i> ,	<i>frigus</i> ,		frigör-
<i>count</i> ,	<i>numeräre</i> ,	numeräv-	numerät-
<i>crops</i> ,	<i>früges</i> (pl.),		früg-
<i>cruel</i> ,	<i>crudélis</i> , e.		
<i>justly</i> ,	<i>jure</i> . ‡		
<i>melt</i> ,	<i>liquescere</i> ,	licu-	
<i>perform</i> ,	<i>efficere</i> ,	effec-	effect-
<i>powerful</i> ,	<i>potens</i> , §		potent-
<i>rich</i> ,	<i>dives</i> ,		divit-
<i>snow</i> ,	<i>nix</i> ,		nĩv-
<i>so</i> ,	<i>itá, tam, adeo</i> .		
<i>so great</i> ,			
<i>such</i> (of size), }	<i>tantus</i> , a, um.		
<i>in such a manner</i> ,	<i>itá</i> .		
<i>such</i> (of such a kind or character), }	<i>talís</i> , e.		

[When '*ut*' the word for '*that*' would be,
'*That—not*' may be expressed by *nē*;
Unless a '*so*' or '*such*' preceded,
For then a '*non*' will still be needed.]

* *i.e.* one that is used in asking questions. From *interrogo*, 'I question.'

† Remember that '*what*' often = '*that which*,' '*those things which*.' The two must be carefully distinguished (166).

‡ Alb. of *jus* used adverbially. Properly an Abl. of Manner (249).

§ Appendix, XX, A.

Exercise 28—continued.

189. The cold is so great *that* the snow does *not* melt. That tyrant was so cruel that all (men) feared him. Who is *so base as to* wish to deceive others? (185.) The multitude of the stars is so great that they cannot be counted. Who was so hard-hearted that he did not weep? My brothers are said to be so idle that they learn nothing. No one is so hard-hearted as to do this. What field is so barren *as never to* bear crops. This field is said to be so barren that it never bears crops. What are you doing? What will you do? What are you going to do? No one is so powerful as to be able to perform everything. The night is so dark that we cannot see the road. No one is so good as never to sin. Our friend is so rich that he has three yachts. Whom are you calling? What animal are you bringing with you? What master taught you *singing*? What girl wrote these things? These boys are so idle that they do not strive *to* become learned. That burden was so heavy that two slaves could not carry it. The letter was written *in-such-a-manner* that (it) could not be read by us. The letter was written in such a manner that we could not read it. The fields must be ploughed in such a manner as to bear crops. We should strive to live in such a manner that all may love us. What do you wish? We think that we are *of-such-a-character* that we are justly praised.

Pica et columba pavōnem convenerant ut eum salutarerent. Dum redeunt, maledīca pica ait, "Quām* insuaves sonos pavo ēdit! Cur non silet? Cur pedes non tegit?" At columba respondit, "Vitia ejus non observavi; corporis vero formositatem et caudæ nitorem adeo mirata sum, ut satis laudare non possim."

Appius 'auctoritatem ita tenebat, ut metuerent eum servi, vererentur liberi, carum omnes haberent.

* Literally, 'how.' Translate, 'What unpleasant sounds,' etc.

LESSON 29.

The Imperative. Nē in Prohibitions.

190. The Imperative * Mood is used to *command*, or to *entreat*; sometimes to *forbid* (194). It is formed from the Present Stem.†

191. Table of endings in the Imperative Mood:—

Active.					Passive.				
Singular.	Plural.				Singular.	Plural.			
AmĀ	to	to	te	tōte nto	re	tor	tor	mīni	ntor
MonĒ	to	to	te	tōte nto	re	tor	tor	mīni	ntor
ReG-ē	}	īto	īto	īte	ītōte unto	ēre	ītor	ītor	īmīni
AcU-ē		īto	īto	īte	ītōte unto	ēre	ītor	ītor	īmīni
AudĪ	to	to	te	tōte unto	re	tor	tor	mīni	untor

There is no *First Person* Imperative.

. *Obs.* Dīco, dūco, facio, fēro, drop ē in the 2nd Person Sing., and make *dic, duc, fac, fer*, respectively. *Scio* makes Imperative *scīto* only in the Singular.

192. The forms ending *to, tote* (Active), and *tor* (Passive), often have a *Future* force.‡ Thus,

Active.				
2nd Pers. Sing.	Ama,	.	.	love, love thou.
"	Amāto,	.	.	thou must or shall love.
3rd	Amāto,	.	.	he must or shall love.
2nd Pers. Plur.	Amāte,	.	.	love, love ye.
"	Amātōte,	.	.	you must or shall love.
3rd	Amanto,	.	.	they must or shall love.

Passive.				
2nd Pers. Sing.	Amāre,	.	.	be loved, be thou loved.
"	Amātor,	.	.	thou must or shall be loved.
3rd	Amātor,	.	.	he must or shall be loved.
2nd Pers. Plur.	Amāmini,	.	.	be loved, be ye loved.
3rd	Amantor,	.	.	they must or shall be loved.

* From *impĕro*, I command. The Imperative includes *advice*, *exhortations*, *requests*, etc.

† "The Stem of a Verb is shown in the Imperative Mood."
(*L. P.* § 11, c.)

‡ These forms are mostly used in *laws*, *wills*, *maxims*, etc.

193. The Present Subjunctive often has an *Imperative force*. Thus, *amem, may I love, or let me love; moneatur, let him be advised; eāmus, let us go.*

Obs. When there is a 'not,' it must be rendered by *ne*. Thus, *nē discat, let him not learn.* (Not, non discat.)

194. In Prohibitions, *i.e.* when you tell a Person *not* to do a thing, the Conjunction *nē* is used with the Second Person of the *Perfect Subjunctive*. Thus, *nē dixeris, do not say; hoc nē fecēris, do not do this.*

'And not,' 'nor,' in Prohibitions, are translated by *nēve* or *neu*; never by *nēque*.

Obs. *Nē* with the 2nd Person of the *Present Subjunctive* is found only in *general precepts*, *i.e.* when 'you' means 'one,' 'any person in general.' The Imperative with *nē* is confined to poetry.

195. A common way of expressing Prohibitions is by using *nōli, nolito*, etc. (Imperative of *nolo**), with a following Infinitive. Thus, *noli dicere, do not say*, literally, *be thou unwilling to say*.

EXERCISE 29.

196.

Vocabulary 29.

<i>am unwilling,</i>	<i>nolle,</i>	<i>nōlū-</i>	
<i>burn,</i>	<i>urere,</i>	<i>us-</i>	<i>ust-</i>
<i>go out,</i>	<i>exire,</i>	<i>exiv-</i>	<i>exit-</i>
<i>heir,</i>	<i>hēres,</i>		<i>hērēd-</i>
<i>nor (in Prohibitions),</i>	<i>nēve, neu.</i>		
<i>now,</i>	<i>nunc.</i>		
<i>or,</i>	<i>aut.</i>		
<i>either—or,</i>	<i>aut—aut.</i>		
<i>remember,</i>	<i>mēmīnisse † (Perf. form with Present meaning).</i>		

[In Prohibitions 'not' is 'ne';
A 'non' is hateful then to see.]

* Appendix, XX, B.

† *Mēmīni* has no Present Stem forms. It has Pluperf. *mēmīnēram*, Fut.-Perf. *mēmīnēro*, Imperat. *memento, mementote*, Subj. Perf. *mēmīnērim*, Pluperf. *mēmīnissem*. (L. P. § 74.)

197. Fathers, warn your sons *not to be idle* (181). Mayest thou live happy. Thou shalt not bury *nor* burn a dead man in the city (192). My son shall be my heir. Either let him drink or let him depart. Soldiers, go into the city. Let us go out of the city; let us go into the woods. Be (ye) happy. Do not lie (195). Imitate the good. Let us not imitate the bad. You must love if you wish to be loved. Do not praise the idle. Exhort your pupils not be always playing. If you can, come hither. Strive to conquer. Do not promise to come to-morrow. Come yourself. Remember death (113). Let us remember that *not even* slaves ought to be despised. Either learn or depart (*pl.*).

Proficiscitor. Lauda bonos. Nolite peccare. Fugiamus. Exsul abito. Puer cultrum acutum nē ferat. Claudite jam rivos, pueri; sat prata bibērunt. Ita vivito ut omnes te ament. Vivite felices. Audite, et spes discite vestras. Fugitote. Arma corporibus tegendis apta sunt. Nil dictu fœdum visu-que hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer est. Milites gladios suos acuunt. I sequere servos fugientes. Secuti estis alium ducem; sequimini nunc Camillum. Ne mortem timueritis. Egredere ex urbe: patent portæ; proficiscere. Hic ames* dici pater atque princeps, Neu sinas Medos equitare inultos. O ego nē possim tales sentire dolores! Mentiantur alii; nos nunquam mentiamur. Incipe, si quid habes.

Vulpes in puteum deciderat, et altiori† margine claudabatur. Forte hircus sitiens in eundem locum venit. Rogavit an‡ aqua dulcis esset et copiosa. Vulpes, fraudem moliens, "Descende," inquit, "amice; tanta est aqua bonitas, ut voluptas mea satiari non possit." Immisit se hircus. Tum vulpes, ejus cornibus nixa,§ e puteo evasit, hircumque ibi inclusum reliquit.

* 'May'st thou be content.'

† 'Too deep' (to admit of escape, 99).

‡ 'Whether' (296).

§ 'Steadying itself on.' From *nitor*.

LESSON 30.

The Indefinite Pronoun, Quis. Cum (Quum).

(Interrogative Sentences.)

198. The Indefinite Pronoun 'Quis,' *any* (with its compounds), is declined *for the most part* like the Relative (Appendix, XVI, H. XVII).

Quis, *any*, is used after *si, if, nē, lest, num*; thus, *si quis, nē quis, num quis* (199, 201).

199. We have seen that *ut (nē)* are used in *Final Sentences*, and *ut (ut—non)* in *Consecutive Sentences*. By the same rule translate—

		<i>In Final Sentences.</i>	<i>In Consecutive Sentences.</i>
<i>that</i>	<i>never,</i>	nē unquam	ut nunquam
<i>that</i>	<i>no,</i>	nē ullus	ut nullus
<i>that</i>	<i>nobody,</i>	nē quis	ut nemo
<i>that</i>	<i>nothing,</i>	nē quid	ut nihil

with the Subjunctive (180, 185).

200. 'Cum,' *when*, is followed by the Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect.

EXAMPLES. (1) *Cum hoc vidēret, exclamavit, when he saw this, he cried out.*

(2) *Cum hoc vidisset, exclamavit, when he had seen this, he cried out.*

The difference in English would be (1) '*seeing this*,' or '*as he saw this*.' (2) '*Having seen this*,' or '*on seeing this*.'

Obs. The want of an Active Perfect Participle (*having loved, having heard*) in Latin is often supplied by *cum* (often written *quum*), with the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* (Example 2). If, however, the Principal Verb is in a *Primary Tense*, the Perfect Subjunctive will be used. Thus, *cum bene vixerit, beate morietur, having lived well. he will die happily.*

201. Questions in Latin are often introduced by the Interrogative Particles **-nē** and **num**; except when an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb (as *quis?* *ubi?*) is expressed.

-*Nē* is *enclitic*.* It is always written after and forms part of a word. But if there is a 'not' in the sentence, -*nē* is joined to the 'non.' Thus, '*nonnē?*'

-*Nē* simply asks a question for information. *Num* expects the answer '*No*.'

EXAMPLES. *Scribit-nē puer?* *Is the boy writing?*

Num scribit puer? *Is the boy writing?* [No] †

Nonne scribit puer? *Is not the boy writing?*

Obs. The Interrogative enclitic *-nē* must be carefully distinguished from the *Final Conjunction nē* (180).

EXERCISE 30.

(Refer to 187.)

202.

Vocabulary 30.

<i>any</i> (after <i>si</i> , <i>nē</i> , <i>num</i>),	<i>quis</i> ‡ (Indefinite).		
<i>dare</i> ,	<i>audēre</i> (<i>ausus sum</i>).		
<i>fling</i> ,	<i>præcipitare</i> ,	<i>præcipitāv-</i>	<i>præcipitāt-</i>
<i>fortune</i> ,	<i>fortūna</i> ,		<i>fortūna-</i>
<i>go forth</i> ,	<i>egredī</i> ,	<i>egress-</i>	
<i>only</i> (adv.),	<i>tantum</i> .		
<i>there</i> ,	<i>illic</i> .		

[When the answer '*No*' is expected, it will be added thus: [No].]

203. Will you not return with me to see my garden? Had you come into the city to salute the general. Had not the master warned the boys not to write such things? Must we not cultivate virtue? Is not this general skilled in waging wars? Must not fortune be conquered by endurance (by bearing)? We must eat to live. Must we not eat to live? We should not live to eat. What boy

* See Vocabulary 12.

† Properly, *The boy is not writing*, is he?

‡ Or, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, if used in agreement. Compare 187.

Exercise 30—continued.

will cover a fault with falsehood? Is not seeing believing? Are you so idle as to learn nothing? [No] Is any one so hard-hearted as not to weep? The fathers warned their sons *never* to cover a fault with falsehood. These boys strive to learn nothing. Have I not often begged you to do nothing rashly? That judge is so hard-hearted that he is beloved by nobody (170). Who is so good as never to sin? That field is so barren that it bears no crops. Has any boy dared to do this? [No] Cicero was so great an orator that no one after him was greater. The boy, when he had heard these things, wept. The enemy, when they saw that their own (men) were being killed, flung themselves into the river. Having written the letter with his own hand, the boy went into the woods to play. The general, having ordered the soldiers to guard the gates of the city, departed. Having put the enemy to flight, our soldiers returned. The soldiers, *seeing* these things (200), went-forth from the camp. *As they returned* they saw the boy weeping.

Num quid vis? Num me putas tam dementem esse ut hoc faciam? *Sub noctem*^s Cæsar portas claudi milites-que ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam cives ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Leges positæ sunt,* nē quis fur esset, neu latro, neu quis adulter (180). Talis est vir, ut nullum negotium tantum sit ac tam difficile, quod ille non conficere possit. Num quid simile populus Romanus audierat aut viderat? Nonne legatos rogavi ut finem orandi facerent? Sæpe ego nē biberem volui dormire videri.

Venator quidam timidus leonis vestigia quærebat. Ligatorum rogavit, qui quercus in silva cædebat, ut sibi vestigia monstraret. "Immo," inquit lignator, "ipsum leonem tibi monstrabo. Illic est. Vides-ne?" Tum venator territus respondit, "At ego non ipsum leonem, sed vestigia tantum leonis quærebam."

* Translate '*were enacted*' (181). From '*pono*.'

LESSON 31.

Impersonal Verbs.

204. Impersonal* Verbs are found only in the *Third Person Singular* of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive Mood. They are mostly of the Second Conjugation (*L. P.* § 75).

Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

205. Many Impersonals take an *Infinitive Clause* as Subject, with an Accusative of the Person.† Thus, oportet me abire, *it behoves me to go away, i.e. I ought to depart* (162).

206. Intransitive Verbs are not used in the Passive except *Impersonally* (81). If the *Agent* is expressed, it will be in the *Ablative* with the Preposition *a* or *ab* (85). Thus, ludo, *I play*; luditur a me, *it is played or there is playing by me, i.e. I play* (*L. P.* § 76).

Obs. The Passives of Transitive Verbs which may be used Intransitively are sometimes similarly employed. Thus, quæritur, *the question is asked* (130).

EXERCISE 31.

(Refer to 160, 161.)

207.

Vocabulary 31.

<i>it is agreed,</i>	constat.
<i>it becomes-not, misbeseems,</i>	dēdēcet.
<i>it behoves (one ought),</i>	oportet.
<i>it beseems,</i>	dēcet.
<i>it delights,</i>	jūvat.
<i>it irks,</i>	pīget.
<i>it is lawful, permitted,</i>	licet.
<i>it repents,</i>	pēnitēt.
<i>it shames,</i>	pūdet.
<i>it wearies,</i>	tædet.

[These Verbs are regularly conjugated in the 3rd Person: *e.g.*, pēnitēt, pēnitēbat, pēnitēbit, pēnituit, etc.]

* From *in*, 'not,' *persōna*, 'a person.' Impersonal Verbs do not admit a *Person*, *i.e.* a living being, as their Subject. They are more correctly termed *Unipersonal*.

† But *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, 'it pleases,' 'it is lawful,' 'it is clear,' take a *Dative* of the Person (240).

208. It becomes not an orator to be angry. We ought to speak. It was announced that the fleet had come into the harbour. There is a running. (We) have walked enough. It delights (us) to go under the shade (*pl.*). (We) had come to the wood. *There is good sleeping*⁹ here. There was playing. It is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus. A stand is made by us. You are ashamed to say these things; you were not ashamed to do (them). Our soldiers fought bravely. It beseems men to bear pains bravely. That river is so deep that we dare not cross it. I shall ask them not to do such things.

Piget nos eadem sæpe audire. A militibus nostris diu resistebatur. Abire licet. Hæc olim meminisse juvabit. Oportet *esse* ut vivas, non vivere ut *ēdas*. Sine virtute bene beate-que vivi⁹ non potest. Sic itur ad astra. Legem brevem esse oportet. Tacendum est feminis. Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi. In eandem arcem fugiendum est. Pœnitet pueros hæc fecisse. Tædet nos diu ambulare. Hoc fieri oportet. Licet-ne proficisci?

LESSON 32.

Apposition. Summus, Imus, etc.

(Conditional Sentences.)

209. When two or more Substantives are used to describe *the same* person or thing, they are said to be *in Apposition*.* Thus, *Marius the Consul; the river Thames*.

A Substantive in Apposition must be *in the same case* as the Substantive which it describes. It is only the *same* person or thing under another name.

EXAMPLES.—Marius consul triumphavit, *Marius the consul triumphed*. Hæc urbs est Roma, *this city is Rome*. Cæsar creatus est consul, *Cæsar was made consul*. Dicunt Cæsarem consulem creatum esse, *they say that Cæsar was made consul*.

* From *appōno*, 'I place by.' A word in Apposition is *placed beside* another word as an Attribute or Epithet. Hence it is either a *name*, a *title*, or a *description* (*L. P.* p. 173).

210. Apposition is often used in Latin where we use in English *as, for, of, when*. Thus,

Urbs Roma,	<i>The city of Rome.*</i>
Cyprus insula,	<i>The island of Cyprus.</i>
Ego te magistrum habeo,	<i>I have you as (or for) my master.</i>
Caius puer hoc fecit,	<i>Caius when a boy did this.</i>

The Apposition-Noun generally stands last in Latin.

211. Many English Substantives which describe position are translated by Latin *Adjectives* in agreement with their Substantives.

Such are *bottom, top; beginning, end, middle; whole, rest*. Thus, *ima quercus, the bottom or foot of the oak; summus mons, the top of the mountain, etc.*

These Adjectives generally stand before their Substantives.

212. After 'if' the English Pluperfect Indicative must be translated by the Latin Pluperfect *Subjunctive*. Thus,

Si diutius vixisset, neminem habuisset parem.
If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had equal.
(If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.)

EXERCISE 32.

213.

Vocabulary 32.

<i>approve,</i>	probāre,	probāv-	probāt-
<i>end of,</i>	extrēmus, a, um	(in agreement).	
<i>experience,</i>	usus,		usu-
<i>history,</i>	historia,		historia-
<i>make a proclamation,</i>	edicere,	ēdix-	ēdict-
<i>middle of, {</i>	mēdius, a, um	(in agreement).	
<i>midst of, }</i>			
<i>mistress,</i>	magistra,		magistra-
<i>third,</i>	tertius, a, um.		
<i>top of,</i>	summus, a, um	(in agreement).	
<i>watch,</i>	vigilia,		vigilia-
<i>wealthy,</i>	opulentus, a, um.		
<i>victory,</i>	victōria,		victoria-

* But 'of,' when it means 'belonging to' or 'made of,' must be translated by an Adjective. Thus, 'the men of Athens,' *Athenienses*; 'a sceptre of gold,' *sceptrum aureum*.

[When the Relative follows a noun in Apposition, the Apposition-noun is thrown into the Relative clause, and the Relative is put first. Thus, *Rome, a city which . . . Roma, quæ urbs ; not urbs quæ.*]

214. We must cultivate art, the mistress of life. It is agreed that art, the mistress of life, should be cultivated. Experience, the best master, has taught me. He said that he had been taught by experience, the best master. I did the same things *when*¹¹ a boy. Cicero, a very great orator, was killed by the soldiers of Antonius. We believe that Cicero, a very great orator, was killed by Antonius' soldiers. He died *before my consulship*.¹¹ In* Herodotus, the father of history, there are many fables. He has gone to the end of the garden, a place which he loves. The top of the mountain was being held by the enemy. The fox fled into the middle of the wood. Antonius called his flight victory. The city of Saguntum was the most wealthy of the cities of Spain. Your sister Julia is said to be very beautiful. So great was the fear of all, that watches were kept through the whole of the city. The judge, a very good man, would have erred if he had done that. If you had sinned, you would have grieved. No one would have come, if you had not written this letter. It is written in the *end of the third book*. He promises to write about this matter in the end of the third book.

Consulem, virum fortissimum, cum exercitu misimus. Consul, vir fortissimus, cum exercitu a nobis missus est. Consules amicos habemus. Non possum id in te culpare, quod in me ipso et prætoris et consulis probavi. Frater meus, si oratores et poetas puer legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi. Potuisses proficisci ex urbe, si voluisses. Quid tu fecisses, si te hortatus essem ut mentireris? Moriamur, et in media arma ruamus. Manlius, consul factus, edixit ne quis extra ordinem pugnaret. Reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierum-que fugere cœpit, ad quos sequendos Cæsar equitatum misit. Vidisti-ne consulem, quem virum omnes laudant?

* 'Apud' (Appendix, XXIII, A).

LESSON 33.

The Accusative. Place. Space. Time.
Double Accusative. Prepositions.

215. The Accusative is the case of the Nearer Object.*

An Accusative of the Object is governed by Transitive Verbs (54).

Many Intransitive Verbs are used Transitive; many become Transitive by being compounded with a Preposition. Comparatively few, however, are found in the Passive, *except Impersonally* (206).

Intransitive Verbs may take an Accusative of *kindred meaning*,† usually with an Adjective in agreement. Thus, *vivo, I live*; *vivere vitam longam, to live a long life*.

216. Verbs of *asking, concealing, and teaching*, and Verbs of *calling, naming, making, thinking*,‡ and the like, take a *Double Accusative*, one of the Person, the other of the *Thing*, in the Active Voice.

The Accusative of the *Thing*, after Verbs of *asking, concealing, and teaching*, remains unchanged even when the Verb is in the Passive Voice. Thus, *Tribūnus me primum sententiam rogavit, The tribune asked me first my opinion*. *Cato primus sententiam rogatus est, Cato was first asked his opinion*.

217. The *Place to which* one comes, goes, sends, etc. is put in the Accusative with the Preposition *ad* or *in*.

* The Nearer or *Direct* Object is so called because it is *directly* or *immediately* affected by the action of the Verb. The Remoter or *Indirect* Object is *indirectly* affected by the action of the Verb.

† Often called the '*Cognate Accusative*.'

‡ Verbs of *making, naming, etc.*, are called *Factitive* Verbs; from *facio*, 'I make.'

But *dōmum*, *home*, *rus*, *the country*, *fōras*, *out of doors*, and names of *towns* or *small islands*, are put in the Accusative *without a Preposition* (31). Thus, *Romam profectus est*, *he set out for Rome*.

218. Duration of Time (*time how long*) is put in the Accusative. Thus, *tres annos Romæ vixit*, *he lived (for) three years at Rome*.

219. The Measure of Space (*distance, height, length, width*) is put in the Accusative. Thus, *fossa quinque pedes lata*, *a ditch five feet wide*.

220. For a list of Prepositions governing the Accusative, see Appendix, XXIII, A.

EXERCISE 33.

221.

Vocabulary 33.

<i>beg-for*</i> (with double acc.)	<i>orāre</i> ,	<i>orāv-</i>	<i>orāt-</i>
<i>besiege</i> ,	<i>oppugnāre</i> ,	<i>oppugnāv-</i>	<i>oppugnāt-</i>
<i>cautious</i> ,	<i>cautus</i> , a, um.		
<i>Ceres</i> , the goddess of	} <i>Cēres</i> ,	} <i>Cērēr-</i>	
agriculture,			
<i>dream</i> (verb),	<i>somniāre</i> ,	<i>somniāv-</i>	
<i>dream</i> (subst.),	<i>somnium</i> ,	<i>somnio-</i>	
<i>home</i> ,	<i>dōmum</i> (acc. after Verbs of motion).		
<i>into the country</i> ,	<i>rus</i> (acc. after Verbs of motion).		
<i>island</i> ,	<i>insūla</i> ,	<i>insula-</i>	
<i>mean</i> ,	<i>sordīdus</i> , a, um.		
<i>opinion</i> ,	<i>sententia</i> ,	<i>sententia-</i>	
<i>thrifty</i> ,	<i>parcus</i> , a, um.		

[Remember that 'for' is not always a sign of the Dative.]

222. Fortune teaches the conquered the art of war. I have dreamed a pleasant dream. The coward calls himself cautious, the mean (man calls himself) thrifty. Ceres is said to have taught men the use of corn. Many states of Greece begged King Philip *for* assistance. The wise think experience the best master. He hopes to live many years. I hope he will live for many years. I never asked the

* 'For,' in Verbs like *ask-for*, *look-for*, etc., is not a sign of the Dative, but a part of the Verb (308).

Exercise 33—continued.

gods for riches. Romulus called the city which he founded, Rome. Fortune, we make thee a goddess. Go ye home; I will go *into* the country. The boy sleeps the whole night. Will the consul be asked his opinion? [No] They would have lived a happier life if they had listened-to (*heard*) me. We have conquered, soldiers, and have fought a great battle. He set out *for* Athens. He is said to have returned to the island *of* Cyprus. Experience, the best master, has taught me many things. All call and think you wise. You would call me wretched. Who taught you letters? You must go out of doors. We sat there the whole day. The city of Troy was besieged *for* ten years by the Greeks. The walls were twenty feet high. Why have they not run the same course *that* (they did) before?

Non possidentem multa vocaveris recte beatum. Cæsar reliquas munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadringentos re-duxit. Socrates totius mundi se civem appellabat. Philo-sophia nos *quum** cæteras res omnes, *tum* quod est diffi-cillimum docuit, ut nosmet ipsos nosceremus. Filium meum hortatus sum ne quid me celaret. Puerum hortatus sum ne quid patrem celaret. Feminae templum Pacis adeunt. Constat feminas templum Pacis adiisse. Taurus mons Ciliciam præterit. Pater meus me puerum ausus est Romam portare, docendum artes. Filium heredem fecit. Doctas eat, inquit, Athenas. Rex Philippus auxilium ro-gatus est. Nuntiatum est equitatum flumen Rhenum transire. Nuntiatum est equitatum flumen Rhenum transiisse. Cæsar socios frumentum, quod polliciti erant, flagitabat. Tres annos nobiscum vixit. Hoc idem viginti annos audio. Ite domum pastæ, venit Hespérus, ite capellæ. Hortum ducentos pedes latum et sexcentos pedes longum habuit. Consul consilium suum omnes celavisse dicitur. Manifestum est id omnes celatos esse. Nuntia-tum est reginam rus abituram esse. Cæsar locum exercitu circumvénit. Legiones ab hostibus circumventæ sunt. Consul sententiam rogatus tacuit. Domum meam venit.

* '*quum*'—'*tum*,' 'both'—'and especially.'

Exercise 33—continued.

Consulis domum venisse dicitur. Longum iter ituri estis. Tres horas a militibus nostris acriter pugnatum est. Apud amicos omnia sunt communia. Helvetii legatos Genēvam ad Cæsarem miserunt. Legati Genevam ad Cæsarem ab Helvetiis missi sunt. Consul cum reliquo exercitu in castra proficiscitur. Vir erat ob virtutem laudandus.

LESSON 34.

The Genitive.

(Subjective Genitive.)

223. The Genitive is used chiefly to define or qualify the word on which it depends.

The *Subjective Genitive* is so called because it denotes the *Subject*, i.e. the person or thing *possessing* or *doing* something. Thus, *Marci amor*, *the love of* (felt by) *Marcus*, implies the same as *Marcus amat*, *Marcus loves* (where *M.* is the Subject, 47).

The Subjective Genitive generally precedes the noun on which it depends (32).

224. The most common use of the Genitive, that of the *Author* or *Possessor*, has been already noticed (30).

225. The Genitive with *est* is used to express *duty*, *mark*, *nature*, *office*, *part*, etc. Thus, *adolescentis est majores natu vereri*, *it is the duty of a young man to reverence his elders by birth*.

226. With Verbs of *valuing* the Value is expressed by the Genitives, *magni*, *parvi*, etc., *pretii* being understood (*L. P.* § 128).

[These Genitives are also used to express *Price* with Verbs of *Selling*.]*

* With the exception of these words, however, *Price* is expressed by the Ablative (256). Some Grammarians refer these Genitives to the *Locative* case (261).

227. The Genitive of *Quality** or *Description* is always found *with an Adjective in agreement*. Thus, *vir excellentis ingenii, a man of eminent genius*. But you could not say, *vir ingenii, a man of genius*. You would have to use an Adjective.

228. A Genitive of the thing divided follows *Partitive*† words. Thus, *magna pars militum, a great part of the soldiers*; *omnium doctissimus, most learned of all*. (*L. P.* § 130.)

229. Neuter Adjectives or Pronouns expressing *Quantity*, and certain Adverbs (as *pārum, sātis*), are followed by a Genitive case. Thus, *multum boni, much (of) good*; *nihil novi, nothing new*; *pārum sapientiæ, too little wisdom*.

[The sign of the Genitive will be omitted in English.]

EXERCISE 34.

230.

Vocabulary 34.

<i>at a great (price),</i>		magni.	
<i>at a little (price),</i>		parvi.	
<i>brave,</i>		fortis, e.	
<i>colour,</i>		colōr,	colōr-
<i>each (of two),</i>	{	uterque, utrāque, utrumque,	
<i>enough,</i>		Gen. utriusque (105).	
<i>money, sum of money,</i>		sātis.	
<i>one (of two)—the other</i>	{	pecūnia,	pecunia-
<i>the one—the other</i>		alter—alter.	
<i>part,</i>		Gen. alterius (105).	
<i>too little,</i>		pars,	parti-
<i>value,</i>		pārum.	
		æstimāre,	æstimāv- æstimāt-

* Quality is also expressed by the *Ablative* (249). The Genitive is generally said to denote mental qualities, the Ablative to denote physical qualities. But this rule has many exceptions.

† From *partior*, 'I divide.' A list of many Partitive words is given, *L. P.* p. 139, N. S. vi. C.

231. It is *the duty* of soldiers to follow their general. It is a mark of a fool to *hold* wisdom *cheap*.¹³ It is the mark of a great mind to despise pleasures. The labour of learning is very great. The enemy killed a great part of our soldiers. Each of them is to be praised. Of all these (people) the Belgæ are the bravest. Many of the citizens have been driven out of the city. Have you seen Cæsar's gardens? Tullus Hostilius was the third of the Roman kings. Much time has been lost by you. You have enough money, too little virtue. We have seen clouds of a red colour. He is a man of the greatest authority. A fleet of twenty ships has been sent to the island of Cyprus. The city of Syracuse is the greatest of Greek cities and the most beautiful of all. He says that his house is valued *very highly*.¹³ It is probable that a part of the third legion will be sent to Athens. No time has been lost.

Sapientis est mortem parvi æstimare. Athenienses belli duos dūces delīgunt, Periclem spectatæ * virtutis virum, et Sōphoclem scriptorem tragoediarum. Milites exsulem, hominem maximi corporis, ad imperatorem duxerant. Beneficiorum maxima sunt ea quæ a parentibus accipimus, dum aut nescimus aut nolūmus. Hunc dolorem capitis † ferre non possum. Est fons aquæ dulcis, cujus ad margīnem sæpe sedere soliti eramus. Quā in vitā est aliquid mali, ea esse beata non potest. Pueri, patrem vestrum, virum summæ virtutis, imitamini. Imperator primam et tertiam ‡ legiones Syracusas misit. Audimus primam et tertiam legiones, cum magna parte equitatus, ab imperatore Syracusas missas esse. Reginae filii Romam ad salutandum consulem missi sunt. Puellæ patrem hortatæ erant ne iudicis consilium parvi æstimaret. Servi tantum vini bibērunt ut stare non possint. Malorum minima sunt eligenda. Rex secum in Hispaniam duxit filiam Juliam annorum decem. Quid novi nuntia-

* 'Tried.'

† 'In the head.'

‡ Not primas, tertias. There could be only one *first* and one *third* legion.

Exercise 34—continued.

tis? Consulum alter interfectus est, alter Carthaginem fugit. Quidquid habui militum, ad urbem custodiendam nisi. Scimus patriam communem omnium nostrum parentem esse (App., XVI, A). Quantum voluptatis¹³ habet industria! Non est sapientis dicere, Vivam. Vive hodie. Fuerunt olim duo pictores celeberrimi, quorum alter Zeuxis, alter Parrhasius appellatus est.

LESSON 35.

The Genitive—continued.

(Objective Genitive. *Miseret, poenitet, etc.*)

232. The *Objective Genitive* denotes the *Object*, i.e. the Person or Thing to which, or against which, some action is directed. Thus, civium amor patriæ, the citizens' love of (for) their country, implies 'cives amant patriam.' Here 'civium' is an instance of the *Subjective*, 'patriæ' of the *Objective Genitive* (223).

The *Objective Genitive* generally follows the noun on which it depends.

233. An *Objective Genitive* follows—

- (1) Substantives, Adjectives, and Participles,* which express *care, desire, knowledge, recollection, skill*, or their opposites (122, 2).
- (2) Adjectives and Verbs of *remembering* or *forgetting*, and some Verbs of *pitying*.†
- (3) Many Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*.

EXAMPLES.—(1) Amor patriæ, *love for one's country*; avidus belli, *greedy for war*; negligens officii, *careless of duty*. (2) Immemor beneficii, *forgetful of a kindness*; miserere mei, *pity me*. (3) Vita plena metus, *a life full of fear*; indigeo medicinæ, *I want medicine*.

* i.e. Participles used as *Adjectives*; as, amans, diligens, negligens (147, Obs.).

† Mēmīni, reminiscor, *I remember*, and obliviscor, *I forget*, take Accusative as well as Genitive. Misereor, miseresco, *I pity*, take the Genitive. Miseror, commiseror, take the Accusative.

Obs. Many words expressing *abundance, fulness, want*, etc., take an Ablative (*L. P.* § 119).

234. The Impersonals,* *miseret, pœnitet, piget, pūdet, tædet*, take an *Accusative* of the *Person who feels* pity, shame, etc.; but a *Genitive* of the person (or thing) who *excites* or *causes* the pity, etc. Thus, *miseret me fratris tui, I pity your brother*; *tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life* † (207).

235. The Objective Genitive will often have to be translated in English by *about, against, for, from*; and sometimes by *in, with*. Thus, *fūga malōrum, an escape from evils*; *cura civitatis, anxiety about the state*. We must be guided by the sense.

EXERCISE 35.

(Refer to 196, 207.)

236.

Vocabulary 35.

<i>confess,</i>	<i>fatēri (fessus sum).</i>	
<i>confidence,</i>	<i>fidūcia,</i>	<i>fiducia-</i>
<i>deny, say—not,</i>	<i>negāre, negāv-</i>	<i>negāt-</i>
<i>desire (subst.),</i>	<i>cupiditas,</i>	<i>cupiditat-</i>
<i>forget,</i>	<i>oblivisci (oblitus sum).</i>	
<i>forgetful,</i>	<i>immemor.</i>	
<i>full,</i>	<i>plenus, a, um.</i>	
<i>jest,</i>	<i>jōcus,</i>	<i>joco- 1</i>
<i>lover,</i>	<i>amans (participle).</i>	
<i>mindful,</i>	<i>mēmor.</i>	
<i>recollect,</i>	<i>reminisci (no Perfect).</i>	
<i>remedy,</i>	<i>remedium,</i>	<i>remedio-</i>
<i>sloth,</i>	<i>ignāvia,</i>	<i>ignavia-</i>
<i>truth,</i>	<i>veritas,</i>	<i>veritat-</i>

[After to pity, remember, forget.
Bear in mind that a Genitive rightly is set.]

* See 204.

† In these examples the Accusative is the case of the *Nearer*, the Genitive the case of the *Remoter Object* (215).

H. L. B. G.]

237. We have never been forgetful of benefits. All things which are seen are full of God. Epaminondas was *such a lover of*¹⁷ truth that he did *not lie even in jest.*² He is said to have been most careless-about his friends (235). I remember, nor shall I ever forget, that night. The love of money destroys many. He denied that he had ever been desirous of waging war. The slaves begged the general to pity them. The desire for pleasure and attachment to virtue cannot easily exist in the same man. Cæsar exhorted the soldiers to remember their former valour, *and not to forget* (their) wives and children (194). We pity the poor. I repent of my folly. The boys are ashamed of their idleness. Socrates was not ashamed to confess that he did not know many things. Must we not seek an escape from danger? The general had such confidence in his own affairs that he was unwilling to change his plans. There is no remedy against death. We should strive to imitate Scævōla's style *in speaking*.

Venturæ mēmōres jam nunc estote senectæ. Vive memor nostri. Amor virtutis est laudandus. Milites finem oppidi oppugnandi fecerunt. Neuter sui tegendi corporis memor fuit. Sororis meæ filius equi regendi imperitus est. Miseremini sociorum. Pudet me consilii mei. Me civitatis morum et piget et tædet. Puer equi regendi peritus fieri cupit. Spes est nulla salutis. Præcepta vivendi audire volumus. Cura rerum alienarum multum negotii tulit. Stultitiæ tuæ te pænitebit. Res est solliciti plena timoris amor. Semper hujus diei et loci meminero. Pecuniæ indigere dicebatur. Mors est fuga sola laborum. Injuriarum oblivisci oportet. Dolor injuriarum non est laudandus. Luctus mortuorum fines suos habet. Si qua tui Corydōnis habet te cura, venito (198). Forte oblitus eram lucernam exstinguere.

LESSON 36.

The Dative.

238. The Dative is the case of the Recipient or Remoter (Indirect) Object (215).

Trajective * words take a Dative of the Remoter Object (*L. P.* § 105).

Many Verbs take an *Accusative* of the Nearer Object as well as a *Dative* of the Remoter Object. Such are called *Trajective-Transitive* Verbs. Thus, *do librum tibi, I give the book to you.*

239. Perhaps the most common use of the Dative is the Dative of the *Person for* † or *to whom* (*Dativus Commōdi vel Incommōdi, L. P.* § 107). Thus, *Ager vobis arabitur, the field shall be ploughed for you; molestus amicis, troublesome to his friends.*

240. GENERAL RULES.

- (1) A Dative follows all the compounds of *sum*, except *possum*.

Obs. *Sum* with the Dative has the meaning of 'habeo,' *I have.* Thus, *est mihi liber, I have a book.*

- (2) A Dative follows many Verbs compounded with *Bene, male, satis, rē-, ad, ante, con, in, inter, de, ob, super, sub, with post and prae.*

- (3) A Dative case will follow *injure, spare, Believe, persuade, give, envy, show, declare, Have-leisure, please, displease, command, obey, Permit, serve, wed* (of females, that's to say), *Favour, indulge, heal, pardon; to this list Add pay-attention, threaten, help, resist.‡*

* From *trajicio*, 'I throw over.' Trajective words *throw* their action *over* to the Remoter Object.

† When 'for' = 'instead of,' or 'in defence of,' the Preposition *pro* is used with the Ablative.

‡ But *delecto, gubernō, jubeo, juvo, lædo, rego, sūno, ūno*, take *Accusative*.

Obs. Many words in Latin are followed by a Dative where we use *no Preposition* in English. Some words, as *irascor*, *I am angry*, take the sign 'with.' After *Compound* words the sign will vary with the meaning of the Latin Preposition (*L. P.* p. 136, G).

EXERCISE 36.

241.

Vocabulary 36.

<i>am angry,</i>	<i>irasci,</i>	(<i>irātus sum</i>).	
<i>am serviceable, do good,</i>	<i>prōdesse,*</i>	<i>prōfū-</i>	
<i>am wanting, fail,</i>	<i>deesse,</i>	<i>dēfū-</i>	
<i>command,</i>	<i>impērāre,</i>	<i>imperāv-</i>	<i>imperāt-</i>
<i>displease,</i>	<i>displicēre,</i>	<i>displicu-</i>	
<i>envy,</i>	<i>invidēre,</i>	<i>invid-</i>	<i>invis-</i>
<i>injure,</i>	<i>nōcēre,</i>	<i>nōcū-</i>	<i>nōcīt-</i>
<i>marry (of the woman),</i>	<i>nūbēre,</i>	<i>nups-</i>	<i>nupt-</i>
<i>obey,</i>	<i>pārēre,</i>	<i>pārū-</i>	
<i>pay attention,</i>	{ <i>dārē ōpēram</i> (122).		
	<i>stūdēre,</i>	<i>stūdū-</i>	
<i>persuade,</i>	<i>persuadēre,</i>	<i>persuās-</i>	<i>persuās-</i>
<i>please,</i>	<i>placēre,</i>	<i>placūt-</i>	<i>placīt-</i>
<i>spare,</i>	<i>parcēre,</i>	<i>peperc-</i>	{ <i>parcīt-</i>
<i>threaten,</i>	<i>mīnāri,</i>	(<i>mīnātus sum</i>).	<i>pars-</i>

['To' is often omitted in English. Thus, I gave *him* the book ;
i.e. I gave the book *to him*.]

242. The slave gave the cup to (his) master. The poet will have told you the whole of the story. For whom are you carrying this burden? I neither am-wanting to you, my brother, nor will I be wanting. The consuls are said to be friendly to us. Know that your letters are most pleasing to me. That man is useless to himself. It is the mark of a wise man to command himself. Do not injure another. It is the duty of a good citizen to obey the laws of his country. I persuaded the general *not* to set out for Rome (181). *I have* two yachts, of which *the one* pleases me, *the other* displeases. Venus married Vulcan. The king threatened the exiles *with death*.¹⁸ Will you not beg the king to spare the wretched

* The compounds of 'sum' are conjugated exactly like 'sum,' but *prodesse* drops *d* before all tenses beginning with a consonant. Thus, *pro-sum* not *prod-sum* (*L. P.* § 50).

Exercise 36—continued.

exiles? That boy pays-attention to reading the orators and poets. His father warned him not to injure the good. He is said to have been warned by his father not to injure the good. We should strive to do good to *as many as possible*.¹⁹ Your design will be serviceable neither to me nor to you. Solon wrote laws for the men of Athens. To himself he seemed happy. It is disgraceful to envy the good. I will show you the way. I am going to give you the book I wrote about despising death. Tell us a story. Do not be angry with me. Do not please yourself too much. The judge has ten sons. Slaves cultivate fields not for themselves but for others. We should be angry with vices, not with men.

Si patriæ prodesse amabitis, bonorum laudem merebimini. Videor mihi omnium miserrimus esse. Hortor vos nē ignoscendo malis bonos perdatia. Tu mihi sola plāces; placeam tibi, Cynthia, solus. Nostro succurre labori. Miseris succurrere disco. Ne qua meis dictis esto mora: neu quis ob inceptum subitum segnior ito. Nē ignavis quidem maledicere oportet. Multis parvumus; nemini nocuimus. Fratrī mei uxor servis ejus semper male-dicebat. Tibi tua, mihi mea placent. Adolescentes sibi imperare discant. Neu desint epulis rosæ, neu vivax * apium, neu breve * lilium. An nescis longas regibus esse manus? Nocere altēri non licet. Non solum nobis divites esse volumus. Intelligimus domum pulcrā dominis ædificatā esse, non muribus. Anātum ova gallinis sæpe supponimus, e quibus pulli orti aluntur ab iis, ut a matribus. Quid illi bello simile† fuit? Quis te mihi casus adēmit? Sic vos non vobis vellēra fertis, oves. Servus exsuli pollicitus erat se reginam interfecturum esse. Mihi nemo est amicior, nec jucundior, nec carior. Tibi uni parcam. In civitate, quibus opes nullæ sunt, bonis invident (166). Lupus canī est simillimus. Constat lupum canī simillimum esse. Fratri tuo ne invidēria.

* 'Long-lived,' 'ever-green,' . . . 'short-lived.'

† *Similis* is generally used with a Genitive of a living being; always with Genitive of a Personal Pronoun.

LESSON 37.

The Dative—continued.

Impersonal Construction.

243. A Dative of the *Purpose** is often used with the Verb *sum*, Verbs of Motion, and a few others, where we in English use a *Nominative* or an *Adjective*.

This Dative is generally found with a *Second Dative* of the *Person* ('the Recipient'). Thus, *Hoc vobis commōdo erit*, *this will be an advantage* (or *advantageous*) *to you*. *Hoc mihi dono dat*, *he gives this to me as a present* (*L. P. § 108*).

244. Verbs which govern a Dative only can only be used *Impersonally* in the Passive Voice. Thus, *nōceo*, *I hurt*; *noceo tibi*, *I hurt you*. But, *I am hurt*, is not '*noceor*,' but '*mihi nocētur*,' *hurt-is-done to me*.

245. As Verbs governing the Dative can only be used *Impersonally* in the Passive (244), so the *Gerundive* of Verbs which govern a Dative admits of the *Impersonal Construction only* (130). Thus, *credendum est amico*, *one (we) must trust a friend*. (Not, '*a friend must trust*.')
'*Credendus est amicus*' would be wrong.

Obs. If it is necessary to name the *Agent*, the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab* should be used rather than the Dative, to avoid ambiguity. Thus, *reginæ a nobis parendum est*, *we must obey the queen* (literally, *obedience-must-be-rendered to the queen by us*). Here, *reginæ* is Dative of the Object. A second *Dative* of the *Agent* would render it doubtful whether the queen must obey us, or we must obey the queen. (Compare 133.)

* *i.e.* that *for* which a person or thing *serves*. It is also called the Dative of the Complement (*L. P. § 108*) and the Dative of the *Predicate*.

EXERCISE 37.

246.

Vocabulary 37.

<i>advantage,</i>	commōdum,	commōdo-
<i>advantageous, to be,</i>	commōdo esse.	
<i>disgrace,</i>	dēdēcus,	dēdēcōr-
<i>gift,</i>	{ dōnum,	dono-
	{ mūnus,	mūnēr-
<i>hatred,</i>	odium,	odio-
<i>hateful, to be,</i>	odio esse.	
<i>laughing-stock,</i>	ludibrium,	ludibrio-
<i>liar,</i>	mendax,	mendāci-
<i>protection,</i>	præsidium,	præsidio-

247. Cæsar left the first and third legions *as a protection* for the camp (243). He gave this book to me *as a gift*. Was not this *advantageous* to the citizens? We should succour the poor. The enemy were bravely resisted by our soldiers. Your praise is envied. We shall be spared. Who persuaded you to do this? Have you been persuaded to set out for Rome? [No] The poet seems to have been a laughing-stock to everybody. That matter has been a great care to me. The laws must be obeyed. The orator cannot persuade the citizens to succour the poor. The citizens cannot be persuaded by the orator to succour the poor. *I have* a son who is a very great care (to me). We must pardon many by whom we have been reviled. The book was given to the boy *as a gift*. We must pardon those who have sinned *unwillingly*.¹⁶ A beautiful house often becomes a disgrace to the owner. Liars are never believed. We should not be angry with friends. You cannot be injured. The ambassadors, *seeing* that they were a laughing-stock to everybody, returned home (200). He will be *hateful*²¹ to himself. No hope of resisting the enemy (*pl.*) remains.

Attālus regnum suum Romanis dono dedit. Socii Romanis auxilio venērāt. Cui bono fuerit? Divitibus invideri solet. Exemplo est magni formica laboris (227). Id mihi voluptati erat. Ne hostibus quidem maledicendum est. *Male creditur*⁹ hosti. Facile tibi persuadebo. Facile tibi persuadebitur. Magister, nonne pueris parces? Nonne pueris a te parceretur? Parendum est parentibus. Paren-

Exercise 37—continued.

tibus a filiis bonis parebitur. Duæ legiones a Cæsare præsidio castris relictæ erant. Cæsar Belgis breviter respondit. Belgis a Cæsare breviter responsum est. Ille omnium turpissimus tibi nihil nocuerat. Ab illo omnium turpissimo tibi nihil nocitum erat. Vobis magno honori est sociis auxilio venisse. Respondit se sibi ipsi odio esse. Satisfaciendum est agricolis, quorum in prata filii nostri lusum iverant. Nihil facile persuadetur invitis. Julia sorori risui fuisse creditur. Non modo non invidetur illi ætati, verum etiam favetur. Invitus¹⁶ tibi nocui. Imperavit ne civibus parceretur. Qui mentiri aut fallere patrem audebit, ei facile suadebitur ut cæteros fallat.

LESSON 38.

The Ablative. Quasi-Passive Verbs.

248. An English Preposition is generally required wherever an Ablative stands in Latin. Such are *at*, *by*, *for*, *from*, *in*, *on*, *through*, *with*, etc. (*L. P.* p. 136).

For a list of Latin Prepositions governing the Ablative (Appendix, XXIII, B).

249. Among the most common uses of the Ablative are the following:—

- (1) Ablatives of Cause (*owing to what?*).
- (2) „ Instrument (*by what means?*).
- (3) „ Manner (*how?*).
- (4) „ Quality (*of what description?*).
- (5) „ Agent (*by whom?*).

The Ablatives of the *Instrument* and of the *Agent* have been already noticed (37, 85) and amply illustrated.

The Ablative of *Manner* is rare without an Epithet (*L. P.* p. 136), unless the Preposition *cum* is used. Thus we may say *cum gaudio*, *with joy*; *magno gaudio*,* *with great joy*; but not ‘*gaudio*’ alone.

* Or, *magno cum gaudio*.

EXAMPLES. (1) *pallidus irā, pale with or from anger.*

(2) *mori senectūte, to die of old age.*

(3) *summā celeritate rediit, he returned with the utmost speed.**

(4) *Senex promissā barbā, an old man with a flowing beard (227).*

Obs. The Ablative of *Quality* always takes an Epithet. The Preposition *cum* is never used with an Ablative of the *Instrument* (37).

250. *Quasi-Passive* Verbs have an Active form with Passive meaning. They are five in number (*L. P.* § 72). Of these, *fio, vapūlo, vēneo, †* are used with an Ablative of the *Agent* (with *a* or *ab*) as the Passives of *facio, verbēro, vendo*.

EXERCISE 38.

251.

Vocabulary 38.

<i>am beaten,</i>	<i>vāpūlāre,</i>	<i>vapulāv-</i>	<i>vapulat-</i>
<i>am sold,</i>	<i>vēnīre (250),</i>	<i>veniv-</i>	
<i>bull,</i>	<i>taurus,</i>		<i>tauro-</i>
<i>hunger,</i>	<i>fāmes,</i>		<i>(famī-)</i>
<i>hurt,</i>	<i>lædēre (with acc.), læs-</i>		<i>læs-</i>
<i>joy,</i>	<i>gaudium,</i>		<i>gaudio-</i>
<i>manner, means, } method,</i>	<i>mōdus,</i>		<i>modo-</i>
<i>milk,</i>	<i>lac,</i>		<i>(lacti-)</i>
<i>quiet,</i>	<i>quiētus, a, um.</i>		
<i>shelter,</i>	<i>fovēre,</i>	<i>fōv-</i>	<i>fōt-</i>
<i>shine,</i>	<i>nītēre,</i>	<i>nitū-</i>	
<i>shout,</i>	<i>exclamāre,</i>	<i>exclamāv-</i>	<i>exclamāt-</i>
<i>silence,</i>	<i>silentium,</i>		<i>silentio-</i>
<i>wing,</i>	<i>penna,</i>		<i>penna-</i>

* But '*with speed*,' or '*in haste*,' would be *cēlērīter* (adverb); not '*celeritate*' alone. Many such expressions in English must be translated by Latin *adverbs*; thus, *in anger, in sorrow, with diligence, with kindness* = *angrily, sorrowfully, diligently, kindly*, respectively (188, note). Sometimes *Adjectives* are used adverbially in Latin (see Differences of Idiom, 16).

† Conjugated like *eo*, 'I go.' It is compounded of *venum-eo*, 'I go to sale.' Similarly, *vendo* is *venum-do*. '*Vēneo*' has no supines, gerunds, or participles. It must be carefully distinguished from *vēnio, vēni, ventum, I come* (151, note).

252. The peacock's tail shines with various colours. He did these things with a very sad countenance. He returned home with the utmost speed. Hens shelter their chickens with their wings, *that* they may *not* be hurt by the cold. Many animals are nourished with milk. My brother, whilst he was setting out with a friend, was wounded by the slave with a knife. I have sent my son to you with this letter. He who fears those things which cannot be avoided, can by no means live with a quiet mind. The exile is said to have died of hunger. The orators were heard with silence. All were grieving at the queen's death. The citizens shouted with joy. We are tired with standing. Bulls defend themselves with horns. I heard the orator with pleasure. The boy's letter had been written with great care. We hear that the boy has been beaten by his brother. The world was made by God. My father was (a man) of large body.

Hoc nullo modo fieri potest. Milites nostri summa vi* hostibus restiterunt. *Alia*† animalia gradiendo, *alia* serpendo ad pastum accedunt, *alia* volando, *alia* nando. Ne nunc quidem oculis cernimus ea quæ videmus. Rex, Cæsaris famâ territus, liberos suos obsides misit. Respondit se a cive spoliari malle, quàm ab hoste venire. Cantando victus abibis. Pater ejus magno capite, acutis oculis, magnis pedibus fuit. Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore. Vir summo ingenio, litterarum peritus, multæ industriæ et magni laboris fuit. Non semper viator a latrone, sæpe latro a viatore interficitur. Monère; neu malorum exempla imitatus sis. Multi, malorum exempla imitati, ab iratis parentibus vapulaverunt. Cæsar victis Gallis persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent. Multis ignoscendum est a quibus læsi sumus. Tantâ fuit industriâ filius meus ut discipulorum omnium doctissimus putaretur. Tu si hæc pollicitus esses, omnes gaudio exclamassent.‡ Hic murus æneus esto, nil con-

* 'With all their might.'

† *Alii—alii*, 'some'—'others.'

‡ *L. P.* § 59, note.

Exercise 38—continued.

scire sibi, nullâ pallescere culpâ. Nil sine magno vita labore dedit mortalibus. Mille modis homines moriuntur. Brevitas nostra omnibus Gallis contemptui est præ magnitudine corporum suorum. Incipe, parve puer, risu cognoscere matrem. Sperat tibi a me persuasum iri. Cantabit vacuus* coram latrone viator.

LESSON 39.

The Ablative—continued.

Time, Price.

253. Adjectives and Verbs expressing *abundance, want, deprivation, filling*, etc., commonly take an Ablative. Some take either Genitive or Ablative (233).

254. The following Adjectives and Verbs take an Ablative:—

Adjectives: contentus, *content*; dignus, *worthy*; frētus, *relying*; indignus, *unworthy*; liber, *free*; præditus, *endued*.

Verbs: fungor, *I discharge*; fruor, *I enjoy*; utor, *I use*; vescor, *I feed on*; potior,† *I get possession of*; dignor, *I deem worthy*; nitor, *I lean on*.

255. The *Time at which* or *within which* a thing takes place (*Time when*) is expressed by the Ablative. Thus, æstâte, *in summer*; eâdem nocte, *in the same night*.

Obs. Time *how long* (*Duration of Time*) is expressed by the Accusative (218).

* 'With an empty purse.' Lit. 'empty.'

† Potior also takes a Genitive when it means *to obtain sovereign power, political power*, etc.

256. Cost, Price (Amount at which or for which) are expressed by the Ablative. Thus, *orationem vendidit viginti talentis*, he sold a speech for twenty talents (*L. P.* § 117; p. 137).

Obs. The Ablative is used when the cost or price is specified. The Genitives *magni, parvi*, etc., are used when the value is stated in a general way (226).

EXERCISE 39.

(Refer to 123, 130, 156.)

257.

Vocabulary 39.

<i>at once,</i>	<i>simul.</i>		
<i>buy,</i>	<i>ēmēre,</i>	<i>ēm,</i>	<i>empt-</i>
<i>cheese,</i>	<i>casēus,</i>		<i>caseo-</i>
<i>content,</i>	<i>contentus,</i>	<i>a, um.</i>	
<i>flesh,</i>	<i>caro,</i>		<i>carn-</i>
<i>light,</i>	<i>lux,</i>		<i>lūc-</i>
<i>month,</i>	<i>mensis,</i>		<i>mensi-</i>
<i>most (men),</i>	<i>plerique, pleræque, plerāque</i>		<i>(no Gen.).</i>
<i>talent (sum of money),</i>	<i>talentum,</i>		<i>talento-</i>
<i>talent (ability),</i>	<i>ingēnium,</i>		<i>ingenio-</i>
<i>think (reflect),</i>	<i>cōgitāre,</i>	<i>cogitāv-</i>	<i>cogitāt-</i>
<i>winter (adj.),</i>	<i>hibernus,</i>	<i>a, um.</i>	

[After a Verb of *buying* or *selling*, 'for' is a sign of the Ablative.]

258. Swallows depart in the winter months. The soldiers, having set out in the third watch of the night, came to the town of Saguntum. That victory was bought for much blood. Most people, relying on their talent, both think and speak at once. We are content with a little.* These things are unworthy of you. The advantages which we use, the light which we enjoy, are given us by God. Our men got possession of the enemy's camp. I will use Cicero as my example (210). We are accustomed to lean upon the advice and authority of those whom we love. These people are said to live on milk, cheese, (and) flesh. My friend said that he would sell his yacht for three talents. I was born the same day as the queen. He died the day he was born (168). Having set out from the camp in the third watch with three legions, he came up*

* Use *per-venio*, *-vēni*.

Exercise 39—continued.

to that part of the enemy which had not yet crossed the river. It is the part of a good citizen to strive to discharge the duties of life. The mind of man is nourished by learning and thinking. I endeavoured to *make a good use of*²² the riches which I received from my father.

Auctio fiet: uxor ejus, servi, omnia, auro venibunt. Has oves magno emi (256). Scis vincere, victoriâ uti nescis. Dî tibi divitias dederunt artemque fruendi. Ætas juvenum ad hæc utenda idonea est. Credidimus fati; utendum est judice bello. Tuo tibi judicio est utendum (130). Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori. Sperne voluptates; nocet empta dolore voluptas. Non multi flores *vere primo* nascuntur (211). Commoda quibus utimur, lucem-que qua fruimur, a Deo nobis dari videmus. Quod hostes diebus viginti ægre confecerant, id Cæsar uno die fecit. Si canimus silvas, silvæ sint consule dignæ. Constat cives te omni honore indignissimum existimare. Philosophi docent mortem omni malo carere. Alter frēnis eget, alter calcaribus. Qui veram gloriam adipisci volet, justitiæ officiis fungatur. Dicenda bono sunt bona verba die. Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.

LESSON 40.

The Ablative—continued.

Place.

(The Locative.)

259. The Place *from which* one goes (Place *whence*) is put in the Ablative with *a*, *ab*, or *ex*, unless the place mentioned is a *town* or a *small island*. Thus, *ex urbe vēnit, he is coming out of the city*. But, *Romā profectus est, he set out from Rome*; *Delo rediit, he has returned from Delos*.

Dōmo, from home, *humo, from the ground*, *rūrē, * from the country*, fall under this head.

* *Rūrē* without a Preposition or a qualifying word is never '*in* the country' in prose. '*Ruri*' is '*in* the country.'

260. The Place *where* anything happens is put in the Ablative, generally with the Preposition *in*.* Thus, in Italiā; in urbe; in portu; in summo monte.

[With *medius*, or *totus*, the Preposition is generally omitted.]

But if the Place be a *town* or a *small* island the *Locative*† is used.

261. In *Singular* Nouns of the first and second Declensions the Locative ends, *like the Genitive*, in æ or i. Thus, Romæ‡ at Rome; Corinthi, at Corinth.

In all other Nouns (including those declined only in the Plural) the Locative ends, *like the Ablative*, in is or ibus. Thus, Tibŭre,‡ at Tibur; Athēnis, at Athens; Trallibus, at Tralles.

[Though the Locative, as a separate Case-form, has disappeared, it survives in the following words: *belli*,|| *domi*, *humi*, *foris*, *militiæ*, *ruri*; *heri*, *vesp̄ri*; *ibi*, *ubi*, and a few other so-called Adverbs. Other constructions are also referred with great probability to this case.]

Obs. A Possessive Pronoun, or 'aliēnus' (*of or belonging to another*), is often found in agreement with *domi*. Thus, *domi meæ*, at my house; *domi alienæ*, at another's house, etc. So, *domi Cæsaris*, at Cæsar's house. But no Adjective is allowed except *alienus*.

262. When the name of the place *whither* or *whence* is in apposition to *city*, *island*, *town*, a Preposition is used. Thus, *ad urbem Antiochiām*, *ex urbe Roma*.

But the place *where* is put in the Locative, and the *Apposition-Noun* in the Ablative, with or without *in*. Thus, *Antiochiæ cēlēbri urbe*; *Neapoli in celeberrimo oppido*.

* Sometimes *ad*, *apud*, with Acc. are used. *Ad quartum lapidem*, at the fourth milestone; *apud oppidum*, near the town.

† From *locare* (*locus*), 'to place.' The Locative is an old case denoting *Place where* or *at which*.

‡ Originally, *Romai*, *Tibŭri*.

|| *Belli*, *militiæ*, used only in conjunction with *domi*. Otherwise (*i.e.* when they stand singly) *in bello*, *in militia*.

EXERCISE 40.

263.

Vocabulary 40.

at home,	domi.	
at (my) house,	domi (meæ).	
Cadiz,	Gādēs (pl.),	Gādi-
Corinth,	Corinthus,	Corintho-
delay, wait,	mōrārī (morātus sum).	~
Ephesus,	Ēphēsus,	Ēphēso-
in the country,	rurī (259).	
in the evening,	vespēri.	
in the field, on service,	militiæ.*	
on the ground,	hūmī.	

264. Great orators, poets, and philosophers lived at Athens. At Rome, at Athens, at Corinth, the arts were cultivated. I lived ten years at Cadiz. He set out from Syracuse in the *beginning of* (211) spring. We are going to set out from the city into the country in the evening. We love *life* in the country (113). *Life* in the country is pleasant. *There is good sleeping*^o at my house. The boys were sitting on the ground. Cæsar, having delayed a few days in Asia, heard that Pompey had been seen at Cyprus. The exiles fled from the city of Ephesus. They are said to have fled from Ephesus into Italy. Ambassadors have been sent to Alexandria to the king. When I was at Carthage I often used-to-see Hannibal. At home and *in the field* he was most illustrious. The legions set out for Britain yesterday in the evening. We hear that two legions are about to return from Cadiz. The sun does not always rise in the same place.

Artemisia, Mausōli, Cariæ regis, uxor, nobile illud Hali-carnassi fecit sepulcrum. Tempestatis tantæ dissimilitudines sæpe sunt, ut alia Tuscūli, alia Romæ sit. Babylonē bene vivitur. Audio nihil esse neque auri neque argenti in Britannia (229). Nonne mavis sine periculo domi tuæ esse quàm cum periculo alienæ? Nolebant exire domo. Rus ex urbe fugerunt: rure in urbem redire cupiunt. *Parvi* sunt foris arma, nisi consilium est domi. Virtus omni loco nascitur. In Asiam ad regem militatum† abiit.

* See preceding note.

† 'To serve (as a soldier).' Supine.

Exercise 40—continued.

Pompeio ægrotanti præceptum erat a medico ut turdum edēret. Quum negarent servi eam avem usquam æstivo tempore posse reperiri, nisi apud Lucullum, qui turdos domi aleret, vetuit Pompeius turdum inde peti, aliam-que avem sibi parari jussit. Idem a Cæsare Pharsāli victus Alexandriam in Ægyptum fugit. Ibi a Ptolemæo rege interfectus est.

LESSON 41.

The Ablative Absolute.

265. The Ablative Absolute describes the *time* or the *circumstances under which* a thing happens.

A Substantive and a Participle are often joined in the Ablative case, which is called the *Ablative Absolute** (95).

Instead of a Participle, an Adjective or another Substantive is often used.

EXAMPLES.—Rēgibus exactis, consules creāti sunt, *Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.*

Rege incōlūmi, mens omnibus una est, *The king (being) safe, all have one mind* (240).

Me duce, tutus eris, *I (being) your guide, you will be safe.*

Obs. The Verb *sum* has no *Present Participle* in use. Hence an Adjective alone, or a Substantive alone, must often be used, as in the two last Examples.

266. The Ablative Absolute is often used to supply the want of an Active Perfect Participle in Latin (146, 200). Thus, Imperator, *victis hostibus*, domum rediit, *the general, having conquered the enemy,† returned home.*

* From *absolutus* (Part. of *absolve*), 'free,' 'independent,' i.e. not governed by any other word in the sentence.

† Literally, 'the enemy having been conquered.'

It must be distinctly remembered that *none but Deponent Participles* * can render the English Perfect Participle with 'having.' Thus, Imperator, hæc locutus, abiit, is right. So is, Imperator, victis hostibus, abiit. But 'victus hostes' would be *wrong* (157).

Obs. Beware of putting *itus, ventus, discessus, descensus*, for 'having gone,' 'having come,' 'having departed,' 'having descended,' and the like.

267. In English we have a *Nominative Absolute*, and this will *often* be translated by the Latin Ablative Absolute. Thus, *Thou away*, the very birds are mute (te absente). *The city having been taken*, the soldiers returned (urbe captâ). *Weather permitting*, there will be a display of fireworks.

The Ablative Absolute may be variously rendered in English. Thus, regibus expulsis, *after the expulsion of the kings*. Rege incolumi, *when (while) the king is safe*. Me duce, *if I am your guide*. Te invito, *without your consent*, etc. (341).

EXERCISE 41.

268. Vocabulary 41.

bare,	nudus, a, um.	
cause,	causa,	causa-
disease,	morbis,	morbo-
make (a king, } consul, etc., }	creâre,	creâv- creât-
people,	pöpulus,	populo-
skin, hide,	pellis,	pell-
unaware,	{ inscius, a, um. (me inscio, without my knowledge.)	

* Including, of course, Semi-Deponent Participles, and the Participles, *cénâtus, jurâtus, pötus, pransus, nuptâ* (of a woman). *L.P.* § 73.

[Before doing the sentence, be careful to ask yourself what is the Subject of the Verb; and remember that the *Nominative* is the Absolute case in *English*, but the *Ablative* in *Latin*.]

269. King Pompilius being dead, the people made Tullus Hostilius king. Cæsar, having fortified the camp, left two legions *as* a guard (243). Having heard the shout, our men fought more vigorously. Nature and virtue being our guides, *error cannot by any means be made*.^{*} My father went to Spain as general when I was a boy. Physicians, when they have found the cause of a disease, think that the cure is found. These things were done *in my consulship*.¹¹ The Germans wear† skins, a great part of the body being bare. Cæsar, having conquered Pompey, set out for Asia. My brother sold his horse *without my knowledge*.¹¹ The city having been taken, the enemy begged-for peace. Cæsar having *thus*³ spoken, the ambassadors returned home. The judge having promised to be present, my brother will be easily persuaded to set out for Rome. It is plain that, *if you are unwilling*, the business cannot be finished. The letter having been written, the boy went *to play*. After reading the letter, he returned with the greatest haste.

Quid rides? Mutato nomine, de te fabula narratur. Bello *Helvetiorum*¹⁵ confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, ad Cæsarem gratulatum convenerunt. Te veniente die, te decedente‡ canebat. Vento secundo, classis in portum rediit. Nobis invitis, frustra nitēris ut negotium conficias. Rege duce bellum gestum est. Illud rege vivo factum esse dicitur. Submota rosa, rosarum odor in manu manet. Nonne verum est rosarum odorem, submota rosa, in manu manere? Multis audientibus locutus est. Sole oriente, omnia clariora fiunt. Hæc nullo præcipiente mihi cognita sunt.

Epimenides, quum solus ex urbe egressus esset, subita pluviae vi compellente, in speluncam quandam ingressus, quadraginta septem perpetuos annos obdormivit. Tandem

* 'Errari nullo modo potest' (206).

† 'Utuntur' (254).

‡ Supply 'die.'

Exercise 41—continued.

somno solutus (254) e spelunca prodit; circumspectit; mutata videt omnia, silvas, ripas, flumina, arbōres, agros. Accedit ad urbem; neque novit quemquam, neque a quopiam agnitus est.

Oppidāni, armorum magnā multitudine de muro in fossam quæ erat ante oppidum jactā, sic ut prope summum murum acervi armorum adæquarent,* portis patefactis eo die *pace usi sunt*.†

Sertorius, in prima adversus Cimbros pugna, vulneratus, equo amisso, Rhodānum flumen rapidissimum nando trajecit, lorica et scuto retentis.

LESSON 42.

Ablative of the Thing Compared. Quam
in Comparison.

270. The Ablative is used after Comparative Adjectives to denote the person or thing surpassed by another. Thus, *filia matre pulchrior*, a daughter more beautiful than her mother. *Constat sonum luce tardiorem esse*, it is well-known that sound is slower than light.

271. The word *than*, after Comparatives, may be translated by '*quam*.' The second Substantive must always be in the same case as that to which it is coupled by '*quam*.' Thus, *Eurōpa minor est quam Asia*, Europe is less than Asia.

Obs. The Ablative of the person or thing compared (with *quam* omitted) can be used only when the first Substantive is a Nominative or an Accusative. In all other cases *quàm* must be used (*L. P.* § 124).

* '*Were level with.*'

† '*Kept quiet.*'

272. When the same Substantive would be expressed in *both* clauses, it is left out in the clause which follows 'quàm,' *than*. In English, we use 'that,' or 'those,' in the second clause, instead. Thus, *māris superficies major est quàm terræ,* the sea's surface is greater than (that) of the earth.*

Here 'that' stands for 'the surface.' Hence, *that*, *those*, after 'than,' are not to be translated into Latin.

EXERCISE 42.

273.

Vocabulary 42.

bravery,
future,
ignorance,
knowledge,
spring,
summer,

fortitudo,
futūrus, a, um.
ignoratio,
scientia,
ver,
æstas,

fortitudī-
ignoration-
scientia-
vēr-
æstāt-

[With *Quàm* omitted.]

274. Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Gold is heavier than silver. In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Is not silver lighter than gold? A disgraceful flight *from* death is worse than every death. Those things which I have said are clearer than the sun itself. I hear that your yacht is swifter than mine. The city they have seen is wealthy; the city we are speaking *of*† is wealthier than all. Deeds are more difficult than words.

[With *Quàm* expressed.]

Ignorance of future evils is more useful than knowledge (of them). It is a greater thing to do-good to all men

* *i.e.* quàm *superficies* terræ.

† What does 'of' mean here?

Exercise 42—continued.

than to have great riches. It is agreed that the sun is larger than the earth. I envy nobody more than you. He said that he would-rather be wise than seem (so). The pleasures of the mind are greater than those of the body. We read the works (books) of Cicero more often than those of Sophocles. The bravery of the enemy was not less than that of our soldiers. I would rather receive silver than letters.

Quid philosophiâ magis est colendum? Multi sapientius secundam fortunam quàm adversam ferunt. Nihil libentius aspexit populus Romanus quàm elephantos cum turribus suis, qui non sine sensu captivitatis, submissis cervicibus, victores equos sequebantur. Oculis magis quàm auribus credimus. Quid magis est saxo durum? Zeuxis et Polygnôtus non sunt usi plus quam quattuor coloribus. Multa dictu quàm factu faciliora sunt. Risu inepto nulla res ineptior est. Nobis nihil est timendum magis quàm ille consul. Si in Britanniam profectus esses, nemo in illâ insulâ peritior te fuisset. Nihil est agriculturâ melius, nihil dulcius, nihil homine libero dignius. Decet cariorem nobis esse patriam quàm nosmet ipsos. Pueri vultus magis quàm puellæ nobis placuit. Veteres Romani imperium magis auxerunt parcendo victis, quàm vincendo.

Quum homo quidam, qui diu in altero pede stare didicerat, Lacedæmonio cuidam dixisset, se non arbitrari Lacedæmoniorum quemquam tamdiu idem facere posse, ille respondit; At ansêres te diutius stare possunt.

LESSON 43.

Ablative denoting Amount of Difference.

(Tanto—quanto; eo—quo.)

275. The measure of excess or defect (answering the question *By how much?*) is put in the Ablative. Thus, multo major, *much* (by much) *greater*; major dimidio, *greater by a half*; multo pulcerrimus, *far the most beautiful*.

276. 'The'—'the' before two Comparatives must be translated by 'quanto'—'tanto,' or by 'quo'—'eo.'* Thus, Quanto plus docet, tanto plus discit, *The more he teaches, the more he learns*. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt, *The more men have, the more they desire*.

277. 'That,' 'in order that,' in a sentence containing a Comparative, should be translated by 'quo' (= ut eo) *with the Subjunctive*. Thus, honeste vixit, quo fortius mōrērētur, *he lived virtuously, that he might die the more courageously*.†

The Comparative of an Adverb is the same as the Neuter of the Comparative Adjective (98–103).

278. 'That' (*those*), when it stands for a Substantive which has been expressed in a previous clause, is omitted in Latin. It is *never* translated by *is* or *ille*. Thus, rēgūla utilitatis eadem est quæ (*regula*) honestatis, *the rule of expediency is the same as (that) of honour* (174).

* 'By how much'—'by so much,' 'by what'—'by that.'

† Quo fortius = ut eo fortius, 'that he might die more courageously thereby.'

EXERCISE 43.

279.

Vocabulary 43.

bark (of trees),	cortex,		cortic-
considerably,	aliquanto.		
cover,	obducere,	obdux-	obduct-
heat,	calor,		calor-
much (with Compar.),	multo.		
paint,	pingere,	pinx-	pict-
retain,	tenere,	tenū-	tent-
that (with Compar.),	quo.		
the—the,	quo—eo; quanto—tanto (276).		
trunk,	truncus,		trunco-
young,	jūvenis-	Compar.	jūnior.

['That' with Comparatives, and 'the,'
By quo may best translated be.]

280. The sun is much greater than the earth. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. *The* happier the time is, *the* shorter it seems to be. The trunks of trees are covered with bark, *that* they may be *the* safer from * cold and heat. A law ought to be short that it may the more easily be retained by the unskilful. He spoke *much*,³ that he might seem wise. He spoke much, that he might seem the wiser. Do not paint your face that you may seem younger. The heat of the sun is much greater than that of any fire.

Mathematici docent solem multis partibus majorem esse quam terram. Medico puto aliquid dandum esse, quo sit studiosior. *Gratias tibi agit*† Catullus, pessimus omnium poeta; tanto pessimus omnium poeta, quanto tu optimus omnium es patrōnus (275). Turres in muris Babylonis denis pedibus altiores fuerunt quam muri. Paulo majora canamus. Quanto quisque sibi plura negaverit, a Dis plura feret. Suam atque amicorum salutem negligit. Tuos fratrisque equos vidimus. Monemur a philosophis, ut, quanto superiores sumus, tanto nos geramus submissius.

* Use Prep. *a*.

† 'Returns thanks.'

LESSON 44.

Translation of 'May,' 'Might,' 'Ought.'

281. 'May,' 'might,' and 'ought,' when they stand in a *principal* sentence, are translated by tenses of the Impersonals, 'licet,' *it is allowed*, 'oportet,' *it behoves* (205).

The *English* Perfect Infinitive following *might* or *ought* must be translated by the *Present* Infinitive in Latin, in spite of the 'have.' The Perfect Tense is in Latin expressed by the *Principal Verb*.

EXAMPLES.	mihi ire licet,	<i>I may go.*</i>
	tibi ire licet,	<i>you may go.</i>
	mihi ire licuit,	<i>I might have gone.</i>
	tibi ire licuit,	<i>you might have gone.</i>
	me ire oportet,	<i>I ought to go.</i>
	te ire oportet,	<i>you ought to go.</i>
	me ire oportuit,	<i>I ought to have gone.</i>
	te ire oportuit,	<i>you ought to have gone.</i>

For the construction of the Infinitive with Impersonal Verbs see 162.

282. *Debeo* and *possum* are often used, the former to translate 'ought,' the latter to translate 'can' or 'could.'† Thus, *debeo facere*, *I ought to do it*; *debui facere*, *I ought to have done it*. *Possum facere*, *I can do it*; *potui facere*, *I could have done it*.

Obs. 'Ought' is also often translated by the *Gerundive* (129, 135).

* Literally, 'to go, or going, is-permitted to me.' 'So, me ire oportet, that I should go is-proper.' 'Me' is the Subject of the Infin. ire (160): it is incorrect to say that it is governed by 'oportet.'

† Licet, it is permitted, it is lawful; possum, I am able, I have power.

EXERCISE 44.

283.

Vocabulary 44.

am the slave of,
rest, the,

servire, *serviv-*
cætēri, æ, a (211).

servit-

284. The business being finished, you may go-away. The slave might have sharpened his knife. The farmers ought to have ploughed their fields in winter. *You* could have finished the business in one day. Could you not have persuaded the rest of the pupils not to do these things? You may be happy (117). You might have been happy. These things ought not to have been done. He says that the king ought to have been present. He says that he ought to have been present. A man may not be-the-slave-of glory (240). Might he not have lived at Athens? Ought you not to have returned to Syracuse? The citizens of Athens were spared by those of Lacedæmon. Ought not the citizens of Athens to have been spared by those of Lacedæmon?

Licet mihi beate vivere. Licuit mihi beate vivere. Dicit se pueros literas docere posse. Dixit se pueros literas docere posse. Dicit se pueros literas docere potuisse. Licet nemini contra patriam ducere exercitum. Licet-ne mihi hoc facere? *Quod cuique temporis*¹⁴ ad vivendum datur, eo contentus esse debet (229). Qui currit niti debet ut vincat. Nonne oportet civem bonum niti ut patriam periculis libēret. Omnes homines, qui cæteris animalibus præstare student,* summâ opet niti decet nē vitam silentio transeant. Milites, urbem defendere vos oportebit. Oportet *esse* ut vivas, non vivere ut ēdas. Eorum misereri oportet, qui propter fortunam infelices sunt. Patria hominibus non minus cara esse debet quāam libēri. Cui parci potuit? Fratri meo persuaderi non potest ut Gadibus vivat. Nē loqui quidem nobis licebit.

* 'Are ambitious.'

H. L. B. G.]

† 'With all their might.'

LESSON 45.

Ut, Ne, with Verbs of Fearing.

285. After Verbs and phrases of *fearing*, 'ut' and 'nē' appear to change meanings; i.e., the Latin language uses *ne* where we omit the negative, and uses *ut* where we express the negative. Thus,

Vereor *nē* veniat, *I fear that he will come, or, I fear lest he come.*

Vereor *ut* veniat, *I fear that he will not come.*

Veritus sum *ne* veniret, *I feared he would come.*

Veritus sum *ut* (ne non) veniret, *I feared he would not come.*

The *English Future* is translated by the Latin *Subjunctive Present*.

Instead of *ut*, '*nē non*' may be used for '*that not*.'

Obs. '*That*,' after a Verb of fearing, is often omitted in English. Thus, *I fear he will come.*

EXERCISE 45.

286.

Vocabulary 45.

abandon,	dēsērērē,	deserū-	desert-
am unable,	nequire,	nequiv-	
begin,	exordiri (exorsus sum).		
in vain,	frustrā,		
once,	sēmel.		
panic,	pavor,		pavor-
punishment,	pœna,		pœna-
Scipio,	Scipio,		Scipion-
such great,	tantus, a, um.		
sustain,	sustinēre,	sustinū-	
undertake,	suscipere,	suscēp-	suscept-
visit,	afficere,	affēc-	affect-

287. I fear that you will abandon me. I fear you will not be able to sustain such great labours. Misers always fear that they will not have enough. There was great fear at Rome that the Gauls would return. A panic

Exercise 45—continued.

had seized the soldiers lest Scipio's wound should be mortal. The wicked are always in fear that they will be visited with punishment. We fear that you have undertaken this labour in vain. The father feared that his son would be hurt. There was danger that *a stand could not be made** by our soldiers. There is always danger that women, having once begun to speak, will be unable to *leave off*.†

Unum timendum est, ne ipse tibi defuisse videare. Apud Romanos non mæstitia tantum erat, sed pavor etiam, ne hostes castra adgrederentur. Ille tam dives fuit ut nummos metiretur; ita sordidus, ut se non melius servo vestiret; semper metuebat ne penuria victus se opprimeret.

Periculum est ne ille te verbis obruat. Nullum periculum est *ne* locum *non* invenias. Vereor ne consolatio nulla vera reperiri possit.

LESSON 46.

Quin. Quominus.

288. '*Quin*' is used with the Subjunctive to translate—

- (1) '*But*,' '*but that*,' '*that*,' after Verbs of *doubting* and *denying*, in *negative* sentences.‡
- (2) The Relative Pronoun with *not* (but never instead of *cujus non*, *cui non*).
- (3) '*As not to*,' after '*so*,' '*such*,' in *negative* sentences.
- (4) '*Without*' or '*from*,' with the Verbal Substantive in *-ing*, after Verbs of *preventing*, etc.

* Say, '*it should be resisted*' (244).

† Say, '*to make an end*.'

‡ Interrogative sentences which expect the answer '*No*' are *virtually* negative.

EXAMPLES.—(1) *Haud dubito (negāri non potest) quin turpe sit mentiri, I do not doubt (it cannot be denied) that (or but that) it is disgraceful to lie.*

(2) *Nemo est quin te dementem putet, There is no one who does not think you mad (or, but thinks you mad).*

(3) *Nemo est tam demens quin hæc cupiat, No one is so mad as not to desire these things.*

(4) *Julia eum nunquam vidit quin rideret, Julia never saw him without laughing. Julia inhiberi non potuit quin rideret, Julia could not be restrained from laughing.*

Remember that a Negative or an Interrogative must always precede a Verb of doubting, etc., if 'quin' is to follow.

289. Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* are commonly followed by **quominus**, *by which the less* (= *ut eo minus, that the less thereby*), with the Subjunctive (277). The former may be translated by 'from' with the Verbal Substantive in *-ing*; the latter by the English *Infinitive*. Thus, *Caio nihil obstat* quominus sit beatus, nothing prevents Caius from being happy. Non recusābo quominus hoc faciam, I will not refuse to do this.*

EXERCISE 46.

290.

Vocabulary 46.

<i>consult for the</i>	}	<i>consülëre,</i>	<i>consulu-</i>	<i>consult-</i>
<i>interests of,</i>				
<i>with Dat.</i>				
<i>deter,</i>	}	<i>deterrière,</i>	<i>deterru-</i>	
<i>doubt,</i>				
<i>fratricide,</i>		<i>dubitäre,</i>	<i>dubitäv-</i>	<i>dubität-</i>
		<i>fratricida,</i>		<i>fratricida-</i>
<i>hinder,</i>	}	<i>obstäre (with Dat.),</i>	<i>obstöt-</i>	
		<i>impädire (with Acc.),</i>	<i>impediv-</i>	<i>impedit-</i>

* Literally, 'stands in the way of' (240, 2).

Vocabulary 46—continued.

<i>impious,</i>	impius, a, um.		
<i>keep back,</i>	retinēre,	retinu-	retent-
<i>prevent,</i>	{ inhibēre,	inhibu-	inhibit-
	{ also obstare.		
<i>republic,</i>	res-publica.*		
<i>sometimes,</i>	interdum.		
<i>Timoleon,</i>	Timoleon,		Timoleont-

291. The wise man will never doubt *that* the soul is immortal. No one is *so* good *as not* to sin sometimes. I do not doubt *that* you are able to teach boys letters. No one will be so foolish as not to confess these things. It cannot be denied that it is more disgraceful to deceive than to be deceived. His mother never saw Timoleon, after his brother's death, *without calling* him a fratricide and impious. The soldiers could not be prevented *from* shouting. There is no one *who* does *not* think that these things ought to be done. Nothing hinders us *from being-able* to do that. What hindered you from coming to see the games? Cæsar's soldiers were *with difficulty* kept back from bursting-into† the town. Death will not deter the wise man from consulting-for (the interests of) the republic and his friends.

Nihil est quin male narrando possit depravari. Nullus fere‡ dies est quin frater meus domum meam veniat. Nulla fere pars est pecōrum quin ad commōda nostra facta sit. Nemo est quin ubivis quā ubi est esse malit. Lege de revocando Cicerone latā, *nemini civi*²⁸ satis justa visa est excusatio quominus adesset. Non recusabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant. Pericula nulla recūso. Negat se recusare quomīnus omnia pericula adeat. Dolore impediōr quomīnus ad te plura scribam. Nihil tam difficile est, quin quærendo possit investigari. Quis dubitat quin in virtute sint divitiæ? Senectus non impedit quomīnus litteris utamur.

* Appendix, IX, Obs.

† Use 'inrumpere in,' with Acc.

‡ 'Scarcely any.'

LESSON 47.

Interrogatives. Direct Questions.

292. A *direct* Question contains the *precise* words in which that question is asked. Thus, '*What is this?*' '*Have you heard the news?*' '*Is it true?*'

An *indirect* Question contains the words of the question *slightly altered*, because dependent on some other Verb or phrase. Thus, '*I will ask him what this is.*' '*I asked him whether he had heard the news.*' '*Tell me if it is true.*'

293. All Interrogatives take the Indicative, *when the question is put directly*: they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation (?).

a. *Num*, *an*, and *-ně* (which is always enclitic*), are not construed in direct sentences.

b. *Num* (in direct questions) expects the answer '*No.*' *An* expects the answer '*No.*' and expresses *impatience, indignation*, etc. *Nonně* expects the answer '*Yes.*'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding '*why*' or '*then*' to the question.

An *credis*? { *Why*, do you believe . . . ?
Do you believe *then* . . . ?

When the answer '*Yes*' cannot possibly be expected, '*an*' should be used rather than '*num*' (201) in direct questions.

* See footnote, p. 26.

EXERCISE 47.

294.

Vocabulary 47.

<i>when?</i>	<i>quando?*</i>
<i>whence?</i>	<i>unde?</i>
<i>where?</i>	<i>ubi!†</i>
	<i>cur?</i>
<i>why?</i>	<i>quārē?</i>
	<i>quid?</i>

295. Whence has the sun its light? Where are you? Why do you laugh? Can you write, boy? Do you wish to be wretched? Do not poets wish to be praised? Do you suppose *then* that I am happy? May I depart? What ought I to say? What ought I to have done? When are you intending-to-set-out for Rome? O country, when shall I behold thee? What do you wish? Do you wish anything? (202). Is any one angry with you?

Num credis sine virtute beatè vivi posse? An piscatorem piscis amare potest? Quid faciebas? Ubi est imperator? Unde venis?—Ventura est regina. Quando? Hodie.—Cras te victurum,‡ cras dicis, Postūme, semper. Dic mihi; cras istud, Postūme, quando venit? Quàm longè|| cras istud! Ubi est, aut unde petendum? Cras istud quanti dic mihi possit ēmi. Cras vives: hodie jam vivēre, Postūme, serum est: Ille sapit, quisquis, Postūme, vixit heri.—An petis ut nostros mittam tibi, Julia, libros? Non faciam: nam vis vendēre, non lēgērē.

Cancer dicebat filio, Mi fili, cur obliquis gressibus incēdis? cur non rectâ viâ¶ pergis? Filius respondit, Faciam, si te idem facientem prius videro.

* 'When' interrogative is never *cūm* (*quum*).

† 'Where' interrogative is never *quā*.

‡ Supply *esse*; 'victurum' from *vivo*.

|| 'How far off is' . . .

¶ 'straight forward.'

LESSON 48.

Indirect Questions.

296. The Subjunctive follows Interrogatives in *Indirect Questions*, i.e. when the question depends on such verbs as *ask, doubt, know, not know*; and such phrases as, *it is uncertain, it signifies*, etc. (292).

Num, an, -nē, in a dependent sentence, are construed '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not then imply that the answer '*No*' is expected.

Obs. '*An*' is never used by Cicero in a single Indirect question.

EXERCISE 48.

297.

Vocabulary 48.

<i>am silent,</i>	{ <i>silēre,</i>	<i>silu-</i>	
<i>uncertain,</i>	{ <i>tacēre,</i>	<i>tacū-</i>	<i>tacit-</i>
	<i>incertus, a, um.</i>		

298. I do not know whence the sun has its fire. It is uncertain where he is. I asked the girl why she was laughing. I asked the boy whether he could write. Being asked whether he thought I was happy, he was silent. Tell me whether I may depart. I asked them when they were intending to set out for Rome. Tell me what I ought to have said. I know not what you ought to say. He asked me what I was doing. Tell me what you think* about my books.

Utrum velis elige. Nescio cui librum dederim. Noli quærere quid cras futurum sit. Fauni vocem equidem nunquam audiui: si tu audisse te dicis, credam; etsi Faunus omnino quid sit nescio. Ignorante rege uter eorum esset Orestes, Pylades Orestem se esse dicebat, ut pro illo necaretur. Videamus uter plus scribere possit. Flumen Arar in Rhodānum influit incredibili lenitate,† ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit.

* *Sentio.*† '*Smoothness of current.*'

Exercise 48—continued.

Quum Xenocrātes philosophus maledīco sermoni qucundam hominum interesset ac tacēret, uno ex his quærente cur solus linguam cohibēret; 'Quia locutum fuisse me,' inquit, 'aliquando * pænituī, tacuisse nunquam.'

Solon, quum interrogaretur cur nullum supplicium constituisset in eum qui parentem necasset, respondit, se id neminem facturum † putasse.—Quum interrogaretur Cato, quem omnium maximè diligeret, respondit, Fratrem.—Dionysius, de quo ante diximus, quum fanum Proserpinae Locris expilavisset, navigabat Syracusas: is-que quum secundissimo vento cursum tenēret, ridens, 'Videtisne,' inquit, 'amici, quā bona a dīs immortalibus navigatio sacrilēgis detur?'

Socrātes, quum ex eo quæsitum esset, Archelāum nonne beatum putaret: 'Haud scio,' inquit, 'nunquam enim cum eo collocutus sum.'

LESSON 49.

Double Questions.

299. In *Double Questions* (whether *Direct* or *Indirect*) the following forms are used:—

1st Question.				2nd Question.			
(a)	num	.	.	.	an	(or).	
(b)	utrum	.	.	.	an	(or).	
(c)	-nē (enclitic)	.	.	.	an	(or).	
(d)	—	.	.	.	an	(or).	

Sometimes, as in (d), the Interrogative Particle is omitted in the First Question. The Second Question is introduced by *an* or *-nē*.

'Or not,' in Direct Questions is '*an non*,' in Indirect Questions, '*necnē*.'

Obs. 'Whether' in Dependent clauses (296) must be carefully distinguished from the *Disjunctive* 'whether' (*sive, seu*).‡

* 'Sometimes.'

† Supply 'esse.'

‡ See Lesson 55.

EXERCISE 49.

300.

Vocabulary 49.

deaf,
even (adj.),
glass, of glass,
it is of consequence,
it is important,
it makes a difference,
it matters,
it signifies,
odd, uneven,
strong,
weak,

surdus, a, um.

par.

vitreus, a, um.

} interest, rēfert (Impersonal).
The degree of importance
is expressed by an adverb
or a neuter adjective.

impar.

valens (participle).

imbecillus, a, um.

[301. [Direct.] Are we mortal or immortal? Is the sun greater or less than the earth? Which is (the) more unhappy, a blind man or a deaf (one)? Have you seen the queen, or not? *It makes a great difference** whether we are strong or weak.

[Indirect.] *It makes no difference†* whether the cup is of gold or of glass. It is uncertain whether the number of stars is even or odd (uneven). Nature bids us do good to men: what signifies it (whether) they are slaves or free?

Scio dolorem non esse nequitiam; desine id me docere. Hoc doce, doleam *necne* doleam nihil interesse.—Tantum id interest, venerit *ne* ad urbem, *an* ab urbe redierit.—Nunquam-ne intelliges statuendum tibi esse *utrum* illi homicidæ sint *an* vindices libertatis?—Iphicrātes, quum interrogaretur *utrum pluris*¹³ patrem matrem *ne* faceret, 'Matrem,' inquit.—*Utrum* hoc tu parum meministi, *an* ego non satis intellexi, *an* mutāsti sententiam?—Is *ne* est quem quæro, *an non*? Nescio gratuler *ne* tibi, *an* timeam.

* *Multum interest.*

† *Nihil rēfert.*

LESSON 50.

Some Conjunctions always found with the Subjunctive.

302. The following Conjunctions are *always* found with the Subjunctive Mood. (*L. P.* § 147, 152.)

Ūtinam, *would that.*

O si (*O! if!*), O that! *would that.*

tamquam, } *as if, as though.*
quāsi, }

quamvis, *however-much, however (although).*

licet, *although.*

With most of these Conjunctions the *Latin Subjunctive Present* must be construed by a *past tense* in English.

Obs. 'Tamquam'* is often followed by *si*, 'if.' It is often preceded by *ita*, *sic*.

EXERCISE 50.

303. Vocabulary 50.

ambition,
do-without,
shout,

ambitio,
cārēre,
clāmāre,

cārū-
clāmāv-

ambition-
clāmāt-

304. He went on shouting (74) as if I were deaf. Would that I might (*pres.*) never imitate the examples of the wicked! Would that this might prove a source of pleasure to you! (243) No one, *however* wealthy he be, can do-without the help of others. Would that this were true! O that every one† would practise virtue! Although ambition is itself a vice, yet it often is the cause of virtues.

Nihil agis, dolor: quamvis sis molestus nunquam fatebor te esse malum. O si angulus ille proximus accēdat, qui nunc deformat agellum. Cum fusti ambu-

* Sometimes written 'tanquam.'

† 'Quisque.'

Exercise 50—continued.

landum est tamquam claudus sim. Parvi primo ortu sic jacent tamquam omnino sine animo sint. Sic cogitandum est tamquam aliquis in pectus intimum inspicere possit. Assimulabo quasi nunc exeam. Dicam, licet mortem mihi minetur. Vita brevis est, licet supra mille annos exeat.* O mihi praeiteritos referat si Jupiter annos. Quamvis amem amicum nostrum, laudare tamen non possum. Alexander Ephesi imaginem suam contemplatus, quam Apelles, celeberrimus illius temporis pictor, pinxerat, minus laudavit picturam quam merebatur. Quum autem Alexandri equus introductus adhinniret equo picto, quasi et hic verus esset equus, Apelles inquit, O rex, equus ille artis pingendi peritior, quam tu, esse videtur.

LESSON 51.

Qui with the Subjunctive.

305. Qui always takes the Subjunctive when it is equivalent to—

- (1) ut is, *that, in order that he*. (Final).
- (2) talis ut, *such that* (Consecutive).
- (3) quia is, *because, since, seeing that he* (Causal).
- (4) licet is, *although he* (Concessive).†

Obs. The Relative may be of any person (168).

EXERCISE 51.

306.

Vocabulary 51.

<i>estimate,</i>	<i>aestimāre,</i>	<i>aestimāv-</i>
<i>hostage,</i>	<i>obses,</i>	<i>obsid-</i>
<i>immediately,</i>	<i>statim.</i>	
<i>in-high-favour,</i>	<i>gratiosus, a, um.</i>	
<i>rank,</i>	<i>ordo,</i>	<i>ordīn-</i>
<i>restore,</i>	<i>reddere, reddid-</i>	<i>reddīt-</i>
<i>senate,</i>	<i>senātus,</i>	<i>senātu-</i>
<i>there are some who,</i>	<i>sunt qui (with subj.).</i>	
<i>there are not wanting</i>	<i>non desunt qui (with subj.).</i>	
<i>persons who,</i>		

* 'Extend.'

† See L. P., Glossary, p. 175.

307. (a) [*Final.*] The Belgæ sent ambassadors to Cæsar to sue-for peace. The Carthaginian ambassadors came to Rome to return thanks* to the senate and people of-Rome, and to ask that the hostages might be restored. The boy asked his father for silver to buy a dog with (with which he might buy).

(b) [*Consecutive.*] There are some who think that the city will be taken. (Persons) were found to say this. There were some who promised to conceal nothing from us. The disgrace is too great to be³⁰ estimated. There are not wanting some who say that you lie. You are not the man to²⁹ be able to command us. There were some who thought that we ought not to use our own judgment (*Gerundive*). There were not wanting some who said that we should be conquered (163). Who is there, however young he be, who knows that he will live till (ad) night?

(c) [*Causal.*] The master ordered the boys to be called to him: they, since they feared nothing, came immediately. Those soldiers are to be praised because they fought bravely. Pythius, since he was in-high-favour with (apud) all ranks, called the fishermen to him and asked them to fish in front of† his gardens. You err in supposing (since-you suppose) that I wish to injure you. You are foolish to do this.

(d) [*Concessive.*] This philosopher, though he is wise, is believed to have said many things rashly. The hunters, though-they tracked the fox with the utmost diligence, could not find it. The enemy, though they fought most bravely, were put to flight by our soldiers.

Flava Ceres, tibi sit nostro de rure corōna spicea, quæ templi pendeat ante fores. Sunt qui dicant exercitum fugatum iri. Non satis idoneus videtur cui tantum negotium committatur. Egomet, qui (305, 4) sero Græcas litteras attigissem, tamen, quum Athenas venissem, complures ibi dies sum commoratus. Totas noctes dormimus, neque ulla est fere‡ quâ non somniamus. Sunt qui

* See 280, p. 119.

† Ante.

‡ 'And there is scarcely any.' Cf. p. 119.

Exercise 51—continued.

velint bonos sapientes-que ex urbe pellere. Fuere qui credērent Crassum non ignarum Catilinæ consilii fuisse. Erant qui vellent tibi nocere. Quis est qui non oderit petulantes pueros? Misēret me tui, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi. *Dignus est qui*³¹ ab omnibus ametur. Nullum est animal præter hominem quod habeat aliquam notitiam Dei. Nihil habes quod timendum sit. Nihil audio quod audisse (pæniteat), nihil dico quod dixisse pæniteat. *Major sum quàm cui*³⁰ possit fortuna nocēre. Homini natura rationem dedit quā regerentur animi appetitua. Scribebat Ælius orationes, quas alii dicerent. Nihil nōvi erat quod ad te scriberem. Errasse mihi videor, qui hoc fecerim. Non is sum qui hoc credam. Non is es qui gloriēre. Cicero, qui cum summā diligentia milites in castris continuisset, septimo die quinque cohortes in proximas sēgētes frumentatum misit.

LESSON 52.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.

308. In Latin, as in English, many Intransitive Verbs become Transitive by being joined with a Preposition. Thus, venio, *ad-venio*, *circum-venio*; eo, *ab-eo*, *circum-eo*, *ex-eo*, etc. etc.

The following English Verbs in common use, however, have Latin equivalents which are Transitive already, without the Preposition:—

<i>aim at,</i>	<i>affectāre.</i>	<i>grieve for,</i>	<i>dolēre.</i>
<i>blush at,</i>	<i>erubescēre.</i>	<i>hope for,</i>	<i>sperāre.</i>
<i>laugh at,</i>	<i>ridēre.</i>	<i>long for,</i>	<i>cupēre.</i>
<i>look at,</i>	<i>spectāre.</i>	<i>look for,</i>	<i>quærēre.</i>
<i>shudder at,</i>	<i>horrēre.</i>	<i>thirst for,</i>	<i>sitire.</i>
<i>smile at,</i>	<i>ridēre.</i>	<i>wait for,</i>	<i>expectāre.</i>
<i>wonder at,</i>	<i>mirāri (dep.).</i>	<i>wish for,</i>	<i>optāre.</i>

So, am afraid *of*, fly *from*, find-fault *with*, listen *to*, pass *by*, etc.

Obs. Some of these Verbs are Intransitive in Latin, used Transitive.

EXERCISE 52.

309.

Vocabulary 52.

<i>am afraid of,</i>	metuere,	metu-	adventu-
<i>arrival,</i>	adventus,		
<i>compose,</i>	compōnere,	composū-	composit-
<i>cruelty,</i>	crudēlitas,		crudēlitat-
<i>find fault with,</i>	reprehendere,	-prehend-	-prehens-
<i>rashness,</i>	tēmēritas,		temeritat-
<i>sovereignty,</i>	regnum,		regno-
<i>verse,</i>	carmen,		carmin-

310. He called his daughter to him, and ordered her to look for his book. Tarquinius aimed at the sovereignty. (Those) are laughed at who compose bad verses. All shudder at your cruelty. All wonder at the man's folly. The citizens were grieving for the good queen's death. We hope for better things. Cæsar bade the Helvetii wait for his arrival. Phæthōn is said to have wished for his father's horses. Cæsar found fault with the rashness of the soldiers. It is the mark of a wise man not to thirst for glory. We are flying from our country. It is the part of a wise man to laugh at the falsehoods of fame. I fear that you are afraid of death, although you are weary of life. He who has lived rightly, either despises death or waits for it with a quiet mind.

Hæc ego non rideo, quamvis tu rideas. Vitia ridere non oportet. Stulte dicta aut facta ridentur. Jupiter perjūros ridet amantes. Illud jam mirari desino quod ante mirabar. Vetita sæpe cupimus. Quo plus sunt potæ (eo) plus sitiuntur aquæ. Ultima semper expectanda dies homini est. Tu id in me reprehendis quod Marco Metello laudi datum est (243). Quis exsul se quoque fugit? Multa petentibus desunt multa. Sanguinem nostrum sitiebat.

Amissum non flet, quum sola est, Gellia patrem: Si quis adest, jussæ prosiliunt lacrimæ.

Agis, rex Lacedæmoniorum, quum audivisset milites suos hostium multitudinem horrere: 'Non percontandum* est,' inquit, 'quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint.' Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet; 'Quot sufficiunt,' inquit, 'ad hostes fugandos.'

* 'We need not inquire.'

LESSON 53.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.

311. Many English Verbs cause difficulty to the beginner because the same form is used both Transitive and Intransitively. Such are:—

*assemble,	*delay,	*land,	stir,
*burn,	feed,	move,	turn,
*cease,	*hasten,	offer,	and many
change,	increase,	roll,	others.

Those marked with an asterisk (*) have a Latin Intransitive equivalent. Where no such equivalent exists, the *Passive* form of the Transitive Verb is used with a Reflexive sense; as, *vector, I turn myself*; or the Reflexive Pronoun is used; as, *puer movet se, the boy moves (himself)*.

Obs. The Reflexive Pronoun would be improperly used of a thing without life. Thus you would say, *lapis motus est, the stone moved*; not, *lapis se movit*.

The use of the Reflexive Pronoun implies *intelligence* and *will* on the part of the Agent.

EXERCISE 53.

(Refer to 156.)

312.

Vocabulary 53.

<i>assemble</i> (Trans.),	convocāre,	-vocāv-	-vocāt-
<i>assemble</i> (Intrans.),	convenīre,	-vēm-	-vent-
<i>burn</i> (Trans.),	cremāre,	cremāv-	cremāt-
<i>burn</i> (Intrans.),	flagrāre,	flagrāv-	
<i>cease,</i>	desinēre,	desiv-	desīt-
<i>change,</i>	mutāre,	mutāv-	mutāt-
<i>delay,</i>	mōrārī (mōrātus sum).		
<i>feed,</i>	pascēre,	pāv-	past-
<i>hasten,</i>	festināre,	festināv-	festināt-
<i>hither,</i>	huc.		

Vocabulary 53—continued.

<i>increase</i> (Trans.),	augēre,	aux-	auct-
<i>increase</i> (Intrans.),	crescere,	crēv-	crēt-
<i>land</i> (= put on shore),	exponere,	-posu-	-posīt-
<i>land</i> (= go on shore),	exire e navī.		
<i>move</i> ,	movēre,	mōv-	mōt-
<i>offer</i> ,	offerre,	obtūl-	oblāt-
<i>roll</i> ,	volvēre,	volv-	volūt-
<i>stir</i> (see <i>move</i>).			
<i>turn</i> ,	convertere,	-vert-	-vers-
<i>wane</i> ,	senescere.		

313. Cæsar, having landed the soldiers, landed himself. Cæsar, having assembled the soldiers, ordered the cavalry to cross the river. The fathers had assembled. Cease that shouting of yours. The voices had ceased. We have ceased to wonder at that which we used to wonder at formerly. We are not going-to-delay at Rome. Did you see the man hastening through the city? They were hastening the work. We warned you not to hasten to depart. Although others change I shall not change. We cannot change the past. Have you changed your plan? [No] The fleet was delayed by the weather. It is clear that the weather is delaying the fleet. The shepherd feeds his sheep. The sheep were feeding on the top of the mountain. We must increase the number of the soldiers. I exhorted the women not to stir from that place. He is said to have stirred the slaves to (ad) war. Reeds bend with the wind. The slave was about to burn the letters. The whole town was burnt with fire. From the top of the house we shall be able to see the city burning. The horse rolls *upon-the-ground*. The stone was rolling. Why do you roll your eyes? Turn your eyes hither. All turned to me. The Gauls saw their own power waning, (and) *that of* the Germans increasing. It cannot be doubted *that* (288) death awaits all. The bough is breaking. Do you not see that the bough is breaking?

Phosphore, redde diem; quid gaudia nostra moraris?
 Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem. Festinate fugam.
 Hæc festinans scripsi. Ea omnia per servos festinabantur.
 Perdidit arma, locum virtutis deseruit, qui semper in

Exercise 53—continued.

augendâ re festinat et obruitur. Cum frondibus uritur arbor. Urendum est vulnus. Crescit amor laudis. Flecti melius est quàm frangi. Cæsar convocavit milites; qui quum convenissent, temeritatem eorum reprehendit. Librum meum sorori tuæ obtuli. Nulla occasio reginæ videndæ oblata est. Cæsar legiones ex navibus exposuit. Ægros nervos esse scimus, quum *incritis nobis*¹¹ moventur. Apes Jovem pāvērē.

Cæsar, exposito exercitu, et loco castris idoneo capto, cohortibus decem *ad** mare relictis et equitibus trecentis qui præsidio navibus essent, tertiâ vigiliâ ad hostes contendit (305).

LESSON 54.

Various uses of *Qui*.

314. The Relative is often used in Latin where we in English use a Conjunction (*and, but, for*) and a Personal or Demonstrative Pronoun.

'*Qui*' is of all Persons; therefore it may be used for *et ego, et tu, et is*, etc.; *sed ego, sed tu, sed is*, etc.; *ego enim, tu enim, is enim*, etc. (compare Lesson 52).

EXERCISE 54.

315. Translate the following examples of the Relative by a Conjunction (*and, but, for*) and a Pronoun.

Periculum quæris, *quo* nihil stultius esse potest. Creûsa Ænæ nupsit; *quâ* mortuâ ille Laviniam duxit. Ratio docet esse deos; *quo* concesso fatendum est eorum consilio mundum administrari. Nihil est virtute amabilius, *quam* qui adeptus erit, a nobis diligetur. Summus orator fuit Cicero; *quem* quis unquam dicendo superavit? Oculi tanquam speculatores altissimum locum obtinent, *ex quo* (306, 1) plurima conspicientes fungantur suo munere.

* 'By' or 'near.'

Exercise 54—continued.

*Cæsar certior factus est** Helvetios flumen transiisse. Quod quum audivisset, ipse cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus summâ celeritate secutus est. Noli abire; quod si feceris, dolebis. Patris mortem doleo; cui si paruissem, minus errassem (*L. P.* p. 46, note). Vitandus est iste frater; quem quamvis diligamus, laudare non possumus.

Cæsar idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quæ omnes incolûmes ad *continentem*† pervenerunt. Sed ex iis *onerariæ*‡ duæ eisdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatæ sunt. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites, Mœrini circumsteterunt atque arma ponere jusserunt. Cum illi *orbe facto*§ se defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hostium circiter millia sex convenerunt. Quâ re nuntiata, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit (243).

Dionysius, quum pilâ ludere vellet, tunicam-que poneret, adolescentulo, quem amabat, gladium tradidisse dicitur. Hic quum quidam familiaris jocans dixisset, 'Huic quidem certe vitam tuam committis,' risisset-que adolescens, utrumque jussit interfici. Quo facto sic doluit, ut nihil *gravius tulerit*|| in vitâ.

Iphicrâtes, dux Atheniensium, quum præsidio teneret Corinthum, et sub adventum hostium ipse vigilias circumiret, vigilem, quem dormientem invenerat, hastâ transfixit. Quod factum quibusdam culpantibus, Qualem invēni, inquit, talem reliqui.

* 'Was informed.'

† Supply 'terram,' the main-land.

‡ Supply 'naves,' merchant-vessels, 'transports.'

§ 'Having formed a circle' (so as to present a front all round).

|| Graviter ferre, 'to take to heart deeply.'

LESSON 55.

Disjunctive or Alternative Conjunctions.

(Either—or. Whether—or.)

316. *Either—or*, aut—aut: vel—vel
 Whether—or, { sive—sive.*
 { seu—seu.

317. *Aut—aut*, are used when the difference between two things is strongly marked; *vel—vel*, when the difference is slight, or when a *choice* is given.

Vel is (a) sometimes '*etiam*;' (b) with Superlatives, '*very*,' '*extremely*,' '*possible*.'

Sive (*seu*) is used when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided which of two assertions or names is the right one, and when the second name is a mere *alias* of the first.* "*Sive—sive* should generally be used when '*whether—or*' may be turned into '*be it—or be it*' (Crombie).

'*Whether*,' when not Interrogative, is to be translated by *sive* (299).

EXERCISE 55.

318. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Quam sis morosus, vel (317) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, penas persolverunt. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus est, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpori prodest. Vel (317) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero. Cui eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas. Vivite felices, memores et vivite nostri, sive

* *Sive* is *si-ve*, '*or if*.' Thus, '*Caius sive Balbus*' is '*Caius, or if you like, Balbus*,' (for that is another name of his).

EXERCISE 56.

323. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. *Alii* ruri *viventem*, *alii* in urbe beatum esse dicunt. Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud* *agentes*, aliud *simulantes*† impröbi sunt. Pisisträtus Homëri libros, *confusos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (321, 5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrulus tacere nequit‡ sibi *commissa* (322, 7). Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *laudanda*. Peccatis irascendum est, non peccantibus. Fons imaginem intuentis reddit. Fugientes sequitur.

LESSON 57.

Participles—continued.

324. Construe the Participles in the following exercise by Verbs with ‘*when*,’ ‘*while*,’ ‘*as*.’

- (1) *ridens*, { *when (while) he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.
 { *as he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.

325. In a sentence with *when* we often omit the auxiliary Verb: hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed ‘*when laughing*.’

326. If the Participle stands alone, ‘*he*,’ ‘*they*,’ ‘*a man*,’ ‘*one*,’ ‘*men*,’ etc. must be supplied as the Nom. to the Verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is laughing*.
 { *when one is laughing*.
 (4) *ridentibus*, *when men* (or *they*) *are laughing*.

* The first *aliud* must be construed ‘*one thing*:’ the second, ‘*another*.’

† Put in a ‘*but*’ before *simulantes*.

‡ *Nequeo*, *nequis*, *nequit*.

EXERCISE 57.

327. *Leo esuriens* rugit. *Xerxes a Græcis victus* in Persiam refūgit. *Esurienti* (326, 3) *gratior est* cibus. *Sudanti* (326, 3) *frigida potio perniciosissima est*. *Dionysius tyrannus, Syracūsis expulsus*, *Corinθi pueros docebat*. *Aranti* *Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est*, eum *Dictatōrem esse factum*. *Hæc poma sedens* decerpsi. *Ne mente quidem recte uti possumus*, multo cibo et potione *implēti*. *Elephantes nemini nocent, nisi lacessiti*. *Alexander moriens annulum suum Perdicæ dederat*. *Tarquinius Ardeam oppugnans imperium perdidit*. *Eos fugientēs sequitur*.

LESSON 58.

Participles—continued.

328. Construe the following Participles by *Verbs* with 'if.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *if he* laughs.*
 { *if a man (or one) laughs.*
- (2) *amatus*, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*
 { *if I had been loved.*

EXERCISE 58.

329. *Quis est qui, totum diem jacūlans, non aliquando collineet?† Equum empturus, cave nō decipiaris*. *Hostes, hanc adepti victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confident*. *Victi hostes in Persiam refugient*. *Admonitus* (328, 2) *venissem*. *Liberatus, rus ex urbe evolabo*. *Romā expulsus, Carthagine pueros docēbo*.

* The Nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they*, etc. according to the Person of the Verb.

† *Pres. Subj.* Construe by *Pres. Indic.* (179).

LESSON 59.

Participles—*continued.*

330. Construe the following Participles by Verbs with *because, for, since*; or by the *Participial Substantive* with *from* or *through*.

dubitans	{	(1) <i>because I* doubt.</i>
		(2) <i>for I doubt.</i>
		(3) <i>since I doubt.</i>
		(4) <i>from doubting.</i>
		(5) <i>through doubting.</i>

EXERCISE 59.

331. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse † *diffidens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (330, 4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquâ anātes degere non possunt, magnam victūs partem in aquâ *quærentes*. Stellæ nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorīnus recte fabulōsus habetur, nunquam *audītus*.

LESSON 60.

Participles—*continued.*

332. Construe the following Participles by Verbs with *though, although*.

(1) <i>ridens,</i>	<i>though he* laughs.</i>
<i>amatus,</i>	{ (2) <i>though he is loved.</i>
	{ (3) <i>though he was loved.</i>

333. We often omit the auxiliary Verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

- (4) *ridens, though laughing.*
 (5) *amatus, though loved.*

* See note, p. 143.

† Construe 'mihi' = *myself*, and take no notice of *ipse*.

EXERCISE 60.

34. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *inquentes*. Multa transimus ante oculos *posita*. Oculis, *non videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente *inpit*, ut eum *cupientes* tenere nequeamus. Omnia *in* *ma* voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furere. Ad cœnam *itus*, nondum venit.

LESSON 61.

Participles—continued.

(Note, p. 143.)

335. Construe the following Past Participles by *er*, with a Verb or Participial Substantive.

EXERCISE 61.

- (Act.) passus, { (1) *after he has suffered.*
 (2) *after he had suffered.*
 (3) *after suffering.*
- (Pass.) amatus, { (4) *after he was (or has been) loved.*
 (5) *after he had been loved.*
 (6) *after having been loved.*

336. Josephus in Ægypto, multa mala *perpassus* **35, 3**), ad summos honores evectus est. Israëlita, *gypto egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt com-
erati. Pleræque scribuntur orationes *habitæ** jam,
 n ut habeantur. Dionysius, a Syracusis *expulsus*,†
rinthi pueros docebat. Alexander Abdolonimum diu
utemplatus interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset.
uti‡ cibum capiunt Germani.

* 'Habeo orationem,' *I deliver a speech.*

† Construe first by **335, 4**; then by **335, 6**.

‡ Participle from *lavare*, 'to wash.'

LESSON 62.

Participles—*continued*.

337. Construe the following Participles by Verbs, and place '*and*' before the Verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The Participle is *generally* to be construed by the same tense as the other Verb.

(1) *Ridens he laughs, exclamat and exclaims.*

(2) *Ridens he laughed, exclamavit and exclaimed.*

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum leporem, he has seized the hare, lacerat, and is mangling it.* (He mangles the seized hare.)

EXERCISE 62.

338. *Jussis divinis obediens virtuti studet. Croesus, a Cyro victus, regno spoliatus est. Troja, equi lignei ope capta, incendio delēta est. Grues, quum loca calidiora petentes maria transmittunt, triangŭli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum* non accidisset, si quiescens legibus paruissem. Cum lēgionibus profectus celeriter adero. Titus Manlius Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum cæsum, torque spoliavit. Comprehensum hominem Romam ducēbant (337, 3). Mulier Alcibiādem suā veste contectum cremavit.*

LESSON 63.

Participles—*continued*.

339. *Non* before a Participle may be construed *without*: the Participle being turned into the Participial Substantive.

(1) *non without, ridens laughing.*

(2) *non without, amatus being loved.*

(3) *non without, amatus loving him.*

But this translation of a Latin Passive Participle by an Active Participle in English is admissible *in the oblique cases only*.

* Construe '*ipsum*' by '*even*.'

EXERCISE 63.

340. *Non petens* regnum accepit. Romani Græcis *non rogati* offerunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum *non spolians*. Neminem in familiaritatem recipe *non cognitum*. Multi homines vituperant libros *non intellectos*. Sapiens est, *nihil* contra mores *facientem*, habere rationem * rei familiaris.†

341. The following are among the most common renderings of the *Ablative Absolute* (267):—

after Tyre was taken,	captâ Tyro.
against my consent,	me invito.
as you were sitting,	te sedente.
at my command,	me ‡ jubente.
because his apple was taken away,	adempto pomo.
during my consulship,	me ‡ consule.
having landed the soldiers,	expositis militibus.
if the cat is caught,	fele comprehensâ.
on the invitation of the queen,	reginâ invitante.
since the business is finished,	confecto negotio.
though the root was cut,	radice succisâ.
under thy guidance,	te ‡ duce.
when Tarquin was reigning,	Tarquinio regnante.
while I am alive,	me vivo.
without saluting you,	te non salutato.

342. In many of the examples in 341 the Substantive in English becomes the Nominative to the Verb. The Substantive may, however, sometimes be the Accusative after the Verb. Thus, *Fasce sublato rediit*, *He took up the bundle* AND returned. Literally, 'the bundle having been taken up' = 'the bundle was taken up by him.'

343. Participles may often be construed by *Substantives* of a kindred meaning. Thus,

Ciconiæ redeuntes,	{	The return of the storks.
The returning storks,		
Januario addito,	{	By the addition of January.
By January added,		
Leges violatæ,	{	The violation of the laws.
The violated laws,		
Vere appropinquante,	{	On the approach of Spring.
Spring approaching,		

* 'To have a regard for.'

† 'His private fortune.'

‡ Not 'meo,' 'tuo.'

LESSON 64.

Conjunctions.

344. *Adversative* Conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition*, are:—

At, autem, sed, vero, verum, . . . *but.*

Tamen (attāmen, verumtāmen), { *yet, however,*
nevertheless,
but yet.

Atqui, *yes but; and yet.*

Of these 'at' is the strongest, 'autem' the weakest. 'Sed' *limits, excludes, or corrects.* 'Verum' is somewhat stronger than 'sed.'

Obs. 'Autem' never stands first in a sentence.

345. *Causal* Conjunctions are:—

Nam (namque), ěnim, *for.*

'Nam' introduces an explanatory reason; 'ěnim' introduces a proof.

Obs. 'Ěnim' never stands first in a sentence.

346. *Illative or Inferential* Conjunctions are:—

Igitur, ergo, . . . *therefore, then.*

Itāque, . . . *and so, accordingly.*

Idcirco, ideo, . . . *on that account, therefore.*

Quare, . . . *on which account, wherefore.*

EXERCISE 64.

347. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus; at placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit ĩdem Themistōcles; at Pericles ĩdem non fecit. Si certum est* facere, facias; *verum* ne post confēras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impediōr. Aut hoc aut illud est: non *autem* hoc (est); ergo (**346**) illud (est). Absolūtus est Caius; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse mortī tam simile, quam somnum: *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

* 'If you are determined.'

Exercise 64—continued.

In eâ re prudentiâ adjûtus est; *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summâ æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnâ nihil nobilius: nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

Magno* Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodëcim cum canibus venaticis exiërunt. Aristides æquâlis fere fuit Themistôcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est)? Nihil labôras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

Before doing any of the SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES, read over these twelve MEMORABILIA, or facts to be noted.

348. The Ablative Singular of all Adjectives in *-is*, and most of those which follow the third Declension, ends in *-i*, not in *-ë* (34).

349. What is apparently an English Substantive must often be translated by a Latin Adjective. Thus, 'a stone wall,' 'an iron chain,' 'an oak table.' Similarly, 'of' often = 'made of,' or 'belonging to.' Thus, 'a cup of gold,' 'men of England.'

350. 'How,' 'what,' qualifying Adjectives and Adverbs, are translated by *quâm*. Similarly, 'such' by 'tam' or 'adeo.' Thus, *How* handsome he is! *What* small hands she has! He was *such*¹⁷ a coward *that* he ran away (189, 185).

351. 'Of' in such expressions as *hear of*, *talk of*, *think of*, is not a sign of the Genitive. Use the Prep. *dē*, 'concerning.'

352. Deponent Verbs cannot be used as Passives (157).

* 'Stare magno' (*pretio* understood), *to cost a man dear* (256).

353. The Relative Pronoun, though often omitted in English, is *never* omitted in Latin (168). It is often used instead of a Conjunction and a Personal or Demonstrative Pronoun (314).

354. Remember '*neque*' for *et non*, and '*nēve*,' or '*neu*' for *et nē* (194).

355. The measure of excess or defect is expressed by the *Ablative*. Thus, *multo major*; not *multum major* (275).

356. The English Participle in *-ing*, which is generally *Present* in meaning, has often a *Perfect* sense. Thus, '*Turning to the queen, he said*,' etc. Was this *after he had turned*, or, *while he was in the act of turning*? Always ask yourself a similar question. The sense will guide you.

357. Compare the following uses of '*to be*:'—

It is pleasant <i>to be loved</i> ,	Jucundum est <i>amari</i> (116, 1).
He wishes <i>to be loved</i> ,	Vult <i>amari</i> (116, 3).
He is <i>to be feared</i> (i.e. must be, ought to be, feared),	} Metuendus est (129).
He is worthy (deserves) <i>to be loved</i> ,	
He is <i>too lowly to be feared</i> ,	} Dignus est qui <i>ametur</i> ³¹ (305). Humilior est quàm qui (ut) <i>metuatur</i> ³⁰ (305).
The plan is <i>to be changed</i> (simple futurity),	
It is <i>to be found</i> in Britain,	Consilium <i>mutabitur</i> . In Britannia <i>inveniri potest</i> , or <i>invenietur</i> .*

358. *Cum* (quum), '*when*,' takes the Subjunctive Imperfect and Pluperfect (200).

When it means, '*although*,' '*since*,' '*whereas*,' it *always* takes the Subjunctive.

359. The following words constantly occur, and often with very different meanings;—*as, but, for, that, to, what, with, without*. Always ask yourself what they really do mean before you attempt to translate them.

* The Gerundive would imply it '*must be found*.'

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 65 (1-103).

There were two roads leading to Luceria, the one, along the coast of the sea, open but longer; the other (which was) shorter, through the Caudine Forks.

<i>there were . . . leading.</i> Omit <i>'there.'</i> <i>along, præter.</i>	<i>coast, ora, æ, f.</i> <i>Caudine Forks, Furculæ Cau-</i> <i>dinae.</i>
---	---

EXERCISE 66 (130-168).

The tree I planted is growing. The women, whose sons are killed, will grieve. You soldiers, who have fought bravely, shall have rewards. The books I gave you are *as good as possible*.¹⁹ There are some who think (306) we should use our weapons.

<i>plant, sēro, sēvi, sātum.</i> <i>reward, præmium, n.</i>	<i>use, utor, with abl.</i>
--	-----------------------------

EXERCISE 67 (145-163).

Alexander, hearing that Darius, the king of the Persians, was preparing innumerable forces of soldiers, replied, 'One wolf does not fear many sheep.'

<i>king, acc. (209).</i> <i>Persian, Persa, æ.</i>	<i>was preparing (163, note).</i> <i>innumerable, innūmerus, a, um.</i>
---	--

EXERCISE 68 (165).

Xerxes, before the sea-fight in which he was conquered by Themistocles, had sent *four thousand armed men* to Delphi, to *plunder*²⁵ the temple of Apollo.

<i>sea-fight, navāle prælum, n.</i> <i>Say, four thousands of. (App.</i> <i>XV, Obs.)</i>	<i>an armed (man), armātus.</i> <i>plunder, diripere.</i>
---	--

EXERCISE 69 (180—185).

About midnight word-was-brought that the enemy had started, that the camp was in flames. At the same time we were informed by deserters that the second and third legions were on the road, and would arrive at daybreak. The soldiers *were exhorted by Caius (157) against pursuing* the enemy; but so great was their ardour that they could not be restrained.

word was brought, 'it was announced' (206). to be in flames, ardere. against pursuing, 'not to pursue.'	on the road, in itinere. deserter, perfuga, æ. at daybreak, primâ luce (211). 'not to pursue.'
---	---

EXERCISE 70 (180—199).

It was well known that the third and tenth legions would return before night: but Cæsar, that the soldiers might not despair of aid, promised to send-forward reinforcements as soon as possible.¹⁹ The camp was so excellently fortified both by nature and by art, that no one feared that it would be taken-by-storm (285). *On the advice of a few lieutenants (341), Cæsar had put Caius over the works.*

it was well known, constabat (161). to despair of, desperare de (abl.).	excellently, egregie. take-by-storm, expugnare. put over, præficio, -feci (240).
--	--

EXERCISE 71 (185—199).

In the same summer six ships were wrecked by a most heavy storm. So great was the violence of the wind and water, that one only escaped unhurt. *All the sailors in the wrecked vessels perished; for orders had been given (206) by the admiral that no one should leave his ship.*

wrecked, 'broken.' escape, evadere, evâsi. only, solum (adv.).	unhurt, 'safe.' admiral, 'prefect of the fleet,' (præfectus). leave, exeo, ire, with e or ex.
--	--

EXERCISE 72 (215—229).

A certain little boy is said to have dreamt a wonderful dream. He saw (imperf.) a grove, and in it very many tables, where boys and girls were feasting. Suddenly an old man, like a doctor, seemed to be present; who *stretched-out his hand and (342) threatened them with*¹⁸ pills and medicines bitter to taste (140). Then (deinde) the old man led the little boy into a cave, where many men and women were walking, loaded with very heavy burdens, which they in-vain strove to shake-off. 'All these,' said he, 'once used to feast in the magic grove. As often as they ate too much food, a part was added to the burden *which they will always have to carry*. Do you not see that (they) all feel most acute pains, which they endeavour to conceal from the rest? (216). Do you wish to be like them?' Having thus spoken, he departed.

little boy, puerulus, i.

grove, nemus, ōris, n.

feast, epŭlor, -āri.

stretch-out, porrigo, -rexi, -rectum.

pill, pillŭla, æ.

cave, antrum, i, n.

magic, mĕgicus, a, um.

as often as, quoties.

will — *carried*, 'will be to-be-carried (Gerundive) by them.'

EXERCISE 73 (216—228).

When two consuls, of whom the one was poor, *but* the other avaricious, were contending in the senate which of-the-two *ought to be sent* (129) into Spain *to wage war*,²⁵ Scipio being asked his opinion, said, 'Send neither; because the one has nothing, to the other nothing is sufficient.' *contend*, contendere.

ought to be sent, 'was meet to be sent.'

EXERCISE 74 (226).

A certain father came to Aristippus the philosopher, and asked him to instruct his son. When, however, he* had asked five hundred drachmæ *as his fee*, the father, deterred by the price, (which seemed too-great to an ignorant and avaricious man,) said, 'I can buy a slave *for so much*.' Then the philosopher said, 'Buy (one), and you will have two.'

instruct, erudire.

| *as his fee*, pro mercēde.

* Emphatic

EXERCISE 75 (229).

The testiness of old men has *some excuse*.¹⁴ The long dresses of our women stir too much dust: they have (their) fingers adorned with emeralds and diamonds; pearls they despise.

testiness, mōrōsītas.
dress, vestis, is.
dust, pulvis, ěris.

emerald, smaragdus.
diamond, ādāmas, adamantis.
pearl, unio, onis.

EXERCISE 76 (225—229).

We see that the highest honours are often given to unworthy people. *How much time*¹⁴ we all lose! It is pleasant *whilst walking*¹ to converse with friends. The stag, coming out of the wood, was torn by dogs. It is the mark of a great mind to despise riches. He was setting out for the city of Rome. They are deliberating about setting out. We saw the soldiers setting out. The Belgæ were deliberating about sending ambassadors. Mæcenas goes to play: I (go) to sleep. Here may I be worshipped; here may I occupy temples with Jupiter. You will always be poor, if you are poor, Æmiliānus. Whilst walking he conversed *much*³ with me. I am going to walk with you.

EXERCISE 77 (228—271).

Zeuxis, the most illustrious of painters, had painted a boy carrying (some) bunches-of-grapes. But a bird having flown-up to *them*, 'I have painted the grapes better than the boy,' said Zeuxis; 'otherwise the bird would have been afraid of the boy' (308).

carry, gestare.
bunch of grapes, uva, æ.

fly up, advōlāre, avi.
otherwise, alioquin.

EXERCISE 78 (110—275).

For us, who love our country, exile is worse than death (270). *Leaving* home is bitter; how much worse is leaving country! (275) In this happy city we enjoy liberty; we are able to earn money, and to support our children. The exile will lose his liberty; he will be able to *earn* nothing; he and *his* will die of starvation (249, 1).

Exercise 78—continued.

But if we must go from Rome into Scythia, O judges, command our wives and children to remain at home, that they may not die with us.

earn, quærere.		his, sui (pl.).
	support, alère.	

EXERCISE 79 (240—244).

A kid, standing upon the roof of a house, began to revile (74) a wolf passing. To whom the wolf said, 'It is* not you, but the roof that* reviles me.' His father is envied. The son does not know that his father is envied. The father does not know that he is envied.

kid, hædus, i, m.		roof, tectum, i, n.
	upon, supra.	

EXERCISE 80 (240).

Our soldiers were so few that we did not dare to give battle; for we had heard that the enemy, in order to overpower us, had assembled all their allies. That nothing, however, might be wanting to the safety of the camp, the general ordered engines to be placed on the walls to be worked by the recruits.

give battle, committere prælium.		engine, tormentum.
overpower, superâre.		work, exerceo (gerundive).
that nothing (199).		recruit, tiro, ònis.

EXERCISE 81 (240—244).

Accordingly there was a long and fierce battle. At nightfall messengers arrived to²⁵ inform Claudius that the cavalry had retreated to the top of the ridge. About two thousand soldiers survived that battle; and when they had marched the whole night they reached the camp in safety. The next day the soldiers could not be persuaded to leave the camp.

there was . . . battle. Impers.		ridge, jugum, i, n.
inform, docere.		in safety, 'safe.'
had retreated, se recepisso.		leave, excēdere, e. (Ex. 71.)

* 'It is,' 'it was' (followed by *who, that*), which add emphasis in English, are omitted in Latin.

EXERCISE 82 (244).

The lieutenants had been warned by the townspeople against going too far (22) to forage. The jungle was so thick that no one could distinguish an enemy lying-hid there. Accordingly the men were commanded to remain within the camp and improve the fortifications. It was reported that Cæsar would arrive the next day and would bring reinforcements with him. Trebius they could hear nothing of.

against going (Ex. 69).
forage, pabulâri.
jungle, lustra, n. pl.

distinguish, cernere.
improve, augere.
reinforcements, subsidia, n. pl.

EXERCISE 83 (243-267).

The line of battle having been drawn up, Trebius exhorted his (men) to attack the enemy with all their might. 'I hope,' said he, 'that this battle will prove advantageous (243) to the cause of Rome. I have promised to bring back my soldiers not only safe, but also victorious. Fight to-day not only for (pro) your life, but also for your reputation. Even the armies of the Carthaginians have been unable to conquer you. Do not be conquered by barbarians.' Having heard these (words), the soldiers asked to be led against the enemy as soon as possible.¹⁹

draw up, instruere, -struxi,
-structum.
with all their might. Ex. 44,
note.
cause of Rome, res Romana.

even . . . unable, 'not . . .
even—have been able.'
Having heard these words,
'which things having been
heard,' or, 'which when they
had heard' (314).

EXERCISE 84 (240-277).

A fox, having been caught in a snare, [and] having escaped with the loss of his tail, thought that life was not worth-living. Accordingly, he assembled the foxes, and endeavoured to persuade them to cut-off their tails, that he might the more easily conceal his own disgrace. But one of them replied, 'If your tail had been safe, you would not have given us that advice' (212).

with the loss of. Use abl. abs.
worth-living (gerundive), 'meet-
to-be lived.'

cut off, abscindere.
one, 'a certain one'; of, e.
give that advice, suadere illud.

EXERCISE 85 (243—277).

A thief having offered meat to a dog, that, the dog being silent, he himself might the more easily enter the consul's house, the dog spoke thus; 'Do you wish me to be silent, that I may not be a protection (243) to my master? You are mistaken. For that sudden kindness of yours bids me to be on my guard lest you should injure my master through my fault' (248).

meat, cibus.
enter, inire (eo).
to be mistaken, errāre.

sudden, repentinus.
kindness, benevolentia.
be on guard, cavēre.

EXERCISE 86 (244—285).

He assembled the soldiers *and* (342) said that he was going to make an expedition into the territory of the Morini. This race had been persuaded to leave their original settlements, where they had dwelt for many years. A more powerful enemy Cæsar had never seen: and the soldiers were afraid *that* they would be conquered. But Cæsar, having exhorted them not to despair of success, promised to give battle *as soon as possible*.¹⁹

expedition, incursio, onis, f.
race, gens, gentis, f.
settlements, sēdes (pl.).

despair of. (Ex. 70.)
success, res secundæ (pl.).
give battle. (Ex. 80.)

EXERCISE 87 (284—289).

A dog by barking was hindering (some) bulls *from enjoying* their fodder. *But* one of (e) the bulls said *to him*, 'Are you not ashamed of such ill-nature, *seeing that you* (305) can neither eat the fodder yourself, nor permit those (to eat it) who can?'

fodder, pābulum, i.

| *ill-nature, acerbitas, ātis, f.*

EXERCISE 88 (271).

*There are some who say that there are dwellings*⁹ (206) in the moon, and that it is a land of many cities and mountains.—The wise man will more rightly be called (169) king than Tarquinius, who was able to rule neither

Exercise 88—continued.

himself nor his own (countrymen); more rightly (will he be called) master of the people than Sylla; more rightly rich than Cræsus. Is it not better to be wise than (to be) rich? (160.)

'There are—say.' Vocabulary 51.

EXERCISE 89 (255—281).

A hungry grasshopper comes to (some) ants, and asks them to give him a morsel of food. To whom they replied, 'You *ought to have got it in summer*.' 'I had no leisure,' said the grasshopper. 'What then were you doing?' 'I was devoting myself to singing,' said she. Then they said, 'If you sang in summer, you shall dance in winter' (192).

grasshopper, cicāda, æ, f.
a morsel, paullulum (229).
get, acquire, quærere.

I have leisure,* vacat mihi
(240).
devote myself, 'pay attention to.'

EXERCISE 90 (292—296).

Is it a fact that the moon is never seen in that land, and that the sun never sets? How many are *there*? Tell me how many *there* are. 'I,' said Claudius, 'have more money than you, *though you are rich*.' 'Pardon me, replied Caius, 'I am richer than you, *since I enjoy health*' (358).

it is a fact, constat (161).
set, occidere.
how many, quot.

there, not to be translated.
enjoy, -utor (254).
health, salus, salūtis, f.

EXERCISE 91 (299).

Having lived many years at Carthage, he returned to Cadiz. Would you rather live at Cadiz *or* at Alexandria? Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which *is-inhabited-by* the Belgæ, another by the Aquitāni, the third by those who are called Gauls.

inhabit, incolō. Use the Passive Construction (84, 85).

* 'I had no leisure'—'there was not leisure to me.'

EXERCISE 92 (288—302).

After many years the son of a certain king was journeying through that land; to whom the old man related that a most beautiful palace lay hid beyond the thicket-of-thorns; and that a royal virgin of unrivalled beauty was sleeping there with all her attendants. 'Many young men,' said he, 'have come, and have endeavoured to break through the thicket; but all, having been entangled in the midst of the bushes, have perished by a most wretched death.' 'Why do you speak thus?' replied the young man. 'You will never deter me from striving to break through the thicket (288). Though you may be able to persuade others, you will not be able to persuade me to follow your advice.' Having thus spoken, he jumped into the midst of the bushes.

journey, facere iter.

palace, palatium, -i, n.

thicket of thorns, spinetum, i. n.

unrivalled, eximius, a, um.

break through, perrumpere.

bush, dumus, i, m.

jump, insilio, ui.

EXERCISE 93 (240—305).

A certain frog, having set out from home, said that he was very skilled in all medicines, and was able to heal all diseases. But a fox answered him, 'Why do you give prescriptions to others, when you are not able to cure that limp of yours?' (305.)

prescription, praeceptum, i, n.

limp, claudicatio, onis, f.

EXERCISE 94 (233—338).

Cotta, a man negligent about his affairs (233), could by no means be persuaded to use economy. His country-house abounded with gold, silver, pictures, (and) statues. He never saw a horse without buying it (288). At length, money failing him, he set out from home at midnight, without the knowledge of his friends,¹¹ and fled to the farthest parts of Gaul (337). But, although he confesses that he deserves to be blamed,³¹ I fear he will never repent of his folly (234, 285).

economy, parsimonia, æ.

country-house, villa, æ.

picture, tabella, æ.

statue, signum, i.

EXERCISE 95 (285—341).

An ass and a fox, having gone-out into the woods to hunt, met a lion. The fox, fearing that she would be killed, *set off* to the lion and (337) promised *to* give up the ass to him. When the ass, *under the guidance of the fox*, had fallen-down into a pit, the lion *turned* to the fox, 'I shall be able to enjoy the ass another day,' quoth he.

give up, trādo, -dīdi, -dītum.
pit, puteus, i, m.

turn (311).
enjoy, potior, -īri (254).

EXERCISE 96 (296—342).

Do you wonder why I do not give you my books *though you ask me* so often? (332.) There is a strong reason. That you may not give your (books) to me.—I do not love thee, Sābīdīus, nor can I say why. This only can I say, I do not love thee.—Lesbia, why do you swear that you were born in Brutus' consulship?¹¹ You lie, Lesbia, you were born *when Numa was king* (341). The features of the mind are more beautiful *than those of the body* (272).

strong, magnus.
reason, causa.

swear, jurāre.
feature, lineamentum.

EXERCISE 97 (296).

Thales, being asked *whether* the deeds of men escaped-the-notice-of the gods, replied, 'Not even their thoughts.'

whether, -nē (296).
deeds, 'things done.'

escape-notice-of, fallo (with acc.).
thoughts, cogitata, n. pl.

EXERCISE 98 (305—307, b)

Chabrias returned to Athens, *and did not stay there longer than was necessary*. For he was not willingly before the eyes of his countrymen, because he both lived (imperf.) expensively and indulged himself *too* bountifully *to*³⁰ be able to escape the envy of the common-people.

was necessary, fuit necesse.
countrymen, 'citizens.'
expensively, laute.

escape, effugere.
envy, invidia, æ.
common-people, vulgus, i.

EXERCISE 99 (302—314).

A bear was boasting that he was the most humane of all animals. 'I am so fond of men,' said he, 'that I do not willingly touch the carcases *even* of the dead.' But a fox having heard *this*, laughing said, 'Would that you would eat the dead, not the living!'

carcase, *cadăver*, *șris*, n.

| *living*, *vivus*, a, um.

EXERCISE 100 (305—314).

In choosing friends we should look for those who are endowed with constancy and virtue. Not all friends are worthy of friendship: and *history* warns us not to join friendships *too easily* (99). There have been some whom (306) their enemies have not been able to harm, while (autem) their friends have been able. A certain poet advises us to join ourselves with hooks of steel to those friends whom we have proved to be true. And we should obey *his* advice (314).

constancy, *constantia*, æ, f.

| *of steel*, *ferreus*, a, um.

history, 'authors' (auctor).

| *prove*, 'know', *cognoscere*.

his advice, 'him advising' (343).

EXERCISE 101 (305—314).

Antisthēnes used to exhort his pupils to *pay-attention* to philosophy. Few obeyed. Accordingly, being angry, he dismissed (them) all. Among them was Diogēnes. But when he, being inflamed by the desire of learning, kept-constantly-coming (74) to Antisthēnes, and would not go away, Antisthēnes at last threatened to *strike*⁶ his head with a stick which he was accustomed to carry in his hand. 'Strike,' said Diogēnes, 'if it pleases you. You will not find a stick so hard *that* you can drive me away *with it*' (305).

dismiss, *dimitto*, -misi.

| *strike*, *percutio*, -cussi, -cus-

inflamed, *incensus*.

| *sum*.

come-constantly, *ventitare* (L. P.

| *stick*, *băcūlum*, i.

§ 71).

| *carry*, *gestare*.

that—with it, 'with which you may be able . . .' (305).

EXERCISE 102 (305—314).

A lion advised a goat walking on the top of a rock to descend into the meadow. *But* the goat answered *him*, 'I am not *one* to prefer pleasure to safety.'

prefer, præpōno, -posui (240).

EXERCISE 103 (305—342).

A crow having been caught in a snare, began to pray to Apollo (74), and promised to give him incense. Having been freed by Apollo, she broke her word. Afterwards, having been again caught in a snare, (being) unmindful of past kindnesses, she neglected Apollo, and prayed to Mercury (342). *But* Mercury said to *her*, 'O most base (one), by no means can I believe you, *seeing that you* (305) have deceived your former patron.'

pray to, orāre (308).
incense, tus, turis, n.

| *break one's word*, fallēre fidem.
Mercury, Mercurius.

EXERCISE 104 (311—343).

(Some) geese and (some) cranes were feeding in the same meadow. At the approach of the owner (343), the cranes easily flew away; but the geese, being hindered by the weight of their body, were caught.

goose, anser, ěris, m.

| *crane*, grus, grŭis, f.
weight, gravitas, tatis, f.

EXERCISE 105 (314—342).

Some boys playing near a marsh were pelting with stones the frogs that were swimming (320) in the water. And when *they* had slain very many, a certain frog lifted his head out of the water and said (342), 'Stop, I pray. Your sport is destruction to us.' (L. P. § 108, III.).

marsh, palus, ūdis, f.
pel, pētēre.

| *slay*, occido, -cidi, -cisum.
lift, tollo, sustŭli, sublātum.

EXERCISE 106 (338—342).

The Athenians were besieging the island of Chius. Chabrias, while he is anxious to enter the harbour, proved a source-of-destruction to himself. For when he had penetrated thither, he was not followed by the rest of the ships. Soon his ship *was struck* by the beak (of another ship) and began to sink (338). The sailors, because the fleet of the Athenians was-at-hand *to*²⁵ catch the swimmers, cast themselves into the sea. But he preferred to perish (rather) than throw away his arms and abandon the ship in which he had been carried (342).

enter, intrāre.

proved, 'was' (243).

*a source of destruction, perniciēs,
ei, f.*

penetrate, penetrare.

struck, percussus, a, um.

sink, sidēre.

am at hand, subsum.

cast, dejicio, -jēci.

carry, veho, veki, vectum.

EXERCISE 107 (200—305).

Diogenēs the philosopher was accustomed to carry with him everywhere a cup of wood, *to draw water with* (307, a) from a fountain or a river. But one day *seeing* (200) a boy drawing water with his hands, he then threw the cup away. 'Begone,' said he; 'I can do-without you.'

of wood, ligneus, a, um.

draw, haurire.

throw away, abjicio, -jēci.

Begone! apāge!

EXERCISE 108 (200—267, 305—314).

The master had gone out, leaving his supper. *In his absence*,¹¹ the door being open, the dog ran into the house, and having jumped on the table, began to eat the meat. But the master suddenly returning, the dog rushed out into the streets. *But* when the master pursued *him* (314), everybody, laughing, said that the man was a fool *because he* left his door open (305).

*leaving his supper, cenā relictā | jump on, insilio, silui, ire, with
(abl. abs.) | in and acc.*

rush out, aufugio, -fūgi.

EXERCISE 109 (211—243).

A hungry fox saw an old cock sitting on the top of an oak. 'Friend,' said the fox, 'I, who used-to-be (imperf. 74) an enemy to you, am now a friend. I am come (93) to announce to you a peace between all animals. It behoves you to descend that we may join embraces.' 'You bring wonderful news,'⁵ answered the cock; 'I for my part never hoped that I should hear *such* pleasant things; but I see two dogs hastening hither to inform me of the common peace. After a short delay I will descend, that we may all embrace *one another* under the tree.' But the fox, having heard *these things* (314), fled with the utmost speed. For dogs are a great terror to foxes (243).

an embrace, amplexus, ūs.
bring news, 'announce.'
I for my part, *equidem*.

terror, formido, *inis. f.*

After a short delay, 'having delayed a short time' (paulisper).
one another, *inter nos*.

EXERCISE 110 (200—249, 4).

A certain Brahmin, *wishing* to pay a vow, set out from home to buy a sheep. By chance there lived in the same street three rogues, most abandoned men; of whom the first, meeting the Brahmin, said, 'I have (240) a sheep most suitable *for* (ad) sacrificing. Will you buy it?' Then he opened his sack and drew out a dog, blind, mangy, most hideous to behold (140). 'What!' replied the Brahmin, 'do you call that mongrel of yours a sheep?' 'Truly I (do),' said he; 'may I perish unless it is a sheep of the softest fleece and of the primest flesh.' 'Friend,' said the Brahmin, 'either I am blind, or thou (art).'

Brahmin, Braminius.
pay, solvere.
vow, votum.
abandoned, 'lost' (perdo).

Will you? 'Are you willing?'
sack, saccus, *i, m.*
hideous, turpis.
fleece, vellus, *eris, n.*

EXERCISE 111 (226—285).

Whilst they are thus conversing with each other, one of the accomplices comes-up. 'O lucky chance!' he exclaimed; 'such a sheep I was seeking with the greatest diligence. *For how much* wilt thou sell it?' Here the Brahmin said, 'O my good (sir), beware. *It is* not a sheep *that* you see, but a most filthy dog.' 'O Brahmin,' replied he; 'I fear thou art either drunk or mad.'

with each other, inter se.

one. Ex. 85.

O lucky chance! O factum bene!

wilt, not a sign of future.

filthy, immundus.

drunk, ebrius.

EXERCISE 112 (296—343).

The third now approaching, the Brahmin said, 'Let us ask this man of-what-sort that animal of yours is.' On their assenting (343), 'O stranger,' said he, 'what does this animal seem to you?' 'To me indeed,' replied he, 'it seems to be a very fat sheep.' 'Nay then,' said the Brahmin, 'if you speak *the truth*,⁵ it cannot be doubted *that* (288) I am deprived of my senses.' Accordingly, he asked pardon from him who was carrying the dog. Then he *bought* the dog *for* a measure of rice, *and* sacrificed *it* to the gods (337, 3), who smote him *in anger*¹⁶ with a very sore disease.

of what sort, qualis, e.

assent, assentior.

Nay then, at.

deprived of, captus (253).

senses, mens, mentis. Use sing.

measure, modius, i.

rice, oryza, æ.

smite, afficio, -feci.

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

(These differences are referred to in the Exercises by a numeral
above the line.)

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
1. <i>While</i> playing. <i>Whilst</i> they are (were) playing.	} During playing (inter luden- dum).
2. Not even Cæsar. Not even in jest.	<i>Nē Cæsar quidem</i> (142). <i>Nē joco quidem</i> .
3. The past. Much. Little. Thus. Everything. What.	Past <i>things</i> (75). Many <i>things</i> . A few <i>things</i> . These <i>things</i> . All <i>things</i> . (Those) <i>things</i> which.
4. <i>It</i> is disgraceful to lie. <i>Lying</i> is disgraceful.	} <i>To lie</i> is disgraceful.
5. To speak <i>the truth</i> . To tell many <i>falsehoods</i> . To make many <i>promises</i> . To make the same <i>boast</i> (<i>promise</i>).	To speak <i>true things</i> . To lie <i>many things</i> . To promise <i>many things</i> . To boast (promise) <i>the same thing</i> or <i>things</i> .
6. He promises (threatens) <i>to come</i> . He hopes (undertakes) <i>to do this</i> .	He promises (threatens) <i>that he will come</i> (Acc. and Infin. 160). He hopes (undertakes) <i>that he shall or will do this</i> (160).
7. Contrary <i>to each other</i> .	Contrary <i>between themselves</i> (inter se).
8. At night-fall.	<i>Near-to</i> night (p. 25).
9. There is <i>pleasant living</i> at Rome.	At Rome <i>it is lived pleasantly</i> .
10. The top of the mountain.	The mountain (where it is) <i>highest</i> (211).
11. Before my consulship. In my prætorship. <i>Without my consent</i> . <i>Under your guidance</i> . <i>I did it when a youth</i> . <i>The island of Cyprus</i> .	Before me consul (ante me consulem, 210). I (being) prætor (Abl. abs.). I (being) unwilling (Abl. abs.). You (being) leader—(te <i>duce</i> ; not <i>two duce</i>). I a youth did it. The island Cyprus.

12. It is the business of
 „ duty of
 „ mark of
 „ office of
 „ part of
 It is characteristic of
 „ incumbent on
 It denotes
- a wise man. } It is of a wise man (225).
13. To hold cheap.
 To think *little of*.
 To value *highly*; *very highly*.
- To value at a little price (*parvi* aestimare, or *facere*).
 To value at a great price; at a very great price (*magni*; *maximi*).
14. No stability.
 Much good.
 How much pleasure!†
- Nothing of stability (229).
 Much of good.
 How much (quantum) of pleasure!
15. The war *with* Pyrrhus,—*with* the Latins.
- The war of Pyrrhus; of the Latins (Obj. Gen. 235).
16. He did it *unwillingly*.
 He went away *in anger*.
- He *unwillingly* did it.
 He *angry* went away.
17. Such a lover of—.
- So loving of (*tam diligens*, *with Gen.*).
18. He threatened *me with* death.
- He threatened *death to me*.
19. As many as possible.
 The greatest possible.
 As soon as possible.
- As the most (*quàm plurimi*).‡
 As the greatest (*quàm maximus*).
 As the earliest (*quàm primum*).
20. I have.
- There is (are) to me.
21. This will be a calamity
 „ calamitous
 „ hateful
- to me. } This will be for a { calamity }
 to me (243). { hatred }
22. To make a good use of.
- To use well.
23. The man you write about.
 All the men in the city.
- The man about whom you write.
 All the men who are in the city (168).
24. To send (write) a person a letter.
 To give a person something.
- To send (write) a letter to a person.
 To give something to a person.

* The thing valued will be in the *Accusative*, in spite of the 'of.'

† Hence, 'no,' 'some' (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), 'much,' 'how much,' 'too much,' etc., are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, *nimum*, etc., followed by the *Genitive*.

‡ i.e. 'as many as the most,' 'as great as the greatest,' etc.

25. A purpose ('to') may be expressed in six different ways:—

He comes <i>to see</i> (in order <i>to see</i>) the games.	(a) Vēnit <i>ut</i> ludos <i>spectet</i> (180).
	(b) Vēnit <i>ad</i> ludos <i>spectandos</i> .
	(c) Vēnit <i>ludorum spectando-</i> <i>rum causâ</i> (Gerundive).
	(d) Vēnit <i>spectatum</i> ludos (139).
	(e) Vēnit ludos <i>spectaturus</i> (147).

Obs. Instead of '*ut*,' the Relative in a *Final* sense (= *ut is*) may be used (305). Remember that the Latin Infinitive *never* expresses a Purpose.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 26. <i>One</i> } must (should, ought to) } | Virtue is <i>to-be-cultivated</i> (Gerun- |
| <i>We</i> } cultivate virtue. } | dive). |
| <i>You</i> } | |
| 27. I <i>may</i> go. | <i>Mihi ire licet.</i> |
| I <i>might have gone</i> . | <i>Mihi ire licuit.</i> |
| 28. No philosopher. | <i>Nemo philosophus.</i> |
| 29. I am not <i>the man to do this</i>
(I am not <i>one to</i> , etc.). | I am not <i>that</i> (person) <i>who</i> can
do (<i>non is sum qui hoc faciam</i>). |
| 30. <i>Too great to be resisted</i> . | <i>Greater than which</i> can be re-
sisted (<i>quàm cui resistatur,</i>
<i>or resisti possit</i>). |
| 31. He (deserves) is worthy <i>to be</i>
loved. | He is worthy <i>who</i> should be
loved (<i>dignus est qui ametur</i>). |
| 32. It is disgraceful
<i>for a boy to</i>
<i>that a boy should</i> * } deceive
<i>his parents.</i> | <i>Puerum parentes fallere turpe</i>
<i>est</i> (Acc. and Infin. 160). |

* '*Should*,' when not expressing *duty* or a *future* event, is often a sign of the Pres. Infin.

TABLE OF SYNONYMES.

A

absum, *I am away, absent*; desum, *I am wanting, missing*.
 ago, *I act, do, transact*; facio, *I make, create*.
 alius, *another, one or another (of several)*; alter, *the one or the other (of two)*.
 amitto, *I lose (simply)*; perdo, *I lose or throw away, by my own fault*; often, *I destroy*.
 amnis, *a large river*; flumen, *a stream, river*; fluvius, *a river*; rivus, *a brook*.
 aspicio, *see cerno*.
 astrum, *a constellation, any of the heavenly bodies*; sidus, *a constellation*; stella, *a single star*.
 atque (ad-que), *and, moreover (introduces an important addition)*; et, *and (associates things of equal importance)*; -que, *and (joins words closely, so as often to present a complex notion)*.
 aut—vel—sive. See Lesson 55.
 autem—sed. See Lesson 64.

B

beatus, *happy (in one's self)*; felix, *making happy, successful*.

C

careo, *I am without*; egeo, *I need*; indigeo, *I need, require (stronger than egeo)*.
 cerno, *I see clearly, distinguish*; video, *I see (simply)*; aspicio, *I look at*; specto, *I gaze at or look at steadily*.
 cogito, *I reflect*; existimo, *I am of opinion*; puto, *I calculate, suppose*.
 culpa, *a fault, error (of persons)*; vitium, *a natural defect, vice (opposed to virtus)*.

D

desum, *see absum*.
 dico, *I say*; loquor, *I speak, talk (opposite of taceo)*; inquam, *I say, quoth I (introducing words as actually spoken)*.
 dominus, *a master, any owner of property*; magister, *a superior, master = teacher*.
 donum, *a gift, present*; munus, *a gift (implying gratitude or obligation on the part of the giver), a reward*.
 duco, *see nubo*.

H. L. B. G.]

H

E

egeo, *see* careo.
 et, *see* atque.
 existimo, *see* cogito.

F

facio, *see* ago.
 felix, *see* beatus.
 flumen, fluvius, *see* amnis.
 fructus, *fruit* of land or trees, *produce*; fruges, *fruits* of the earth,
a crop; seges, *a standing crop of corn*.

H

homo, *a human being*; vir, *a man*, as distinguished from *woman*.
 'Homo' is often used contemptuously.
 hostis, *a public enemy*; inimicus, *a private or personal enemy*.

I

impero, *I command* with authority; jubeo, *I bid, order* (opposite of *veto*).
 inimicus, *see* hostis.
 indigeo, *see* careo.
 invenio, *see* reperio.

J

jubeo, *see* impero.

L

lædo, *I do violence to, hurt* (physically); noceo, *I injure, harm*.
 loquor, *see* dico.

M

magis, *more*, in a greater *degree*; plus, *more*, in a greater *quantity*.
 magister, *see* dominus.
 metuo, *I fear* (of mental anxiety or dread); timeo, *I fear* (of constitutional or natural timidity); vereor, *I fear* (implying *veneration*, but often expressing *misgivings* about something which may or may not happen).
 munus, *see* donum.

N

noceo, *see* lædo.
 nubo, *I am married* (lit. 'veil myself'), said of a woman; duco, *I marry* (fully, duco uxorem, *I take a wife*), said of a man.

P

patria, *country, fatherland*; rus, *the country* (as opposed to *town*).
 perdo, *see* amitto.

peto, *I aim at, seek* (with a view to getting); quaero, *I look or search for, seek* (in order to find).
 plerique, *most men*, the majority; plurimi, *very many*, *most*=more than any other.
 plurimi, *see* plerique.
 plus, *see* magis.
 puto, *see* cogito.

Q

quaero, *see* peto.
 -que, *see* atque.
 quidam, '*one*,' a certain known person; unus, '*one*' numerically.

R

reperio, *I find* (after search); invenio, *I find* (search not being necessarily implied), lit. *I come-upon*.
 rivus, *see* amnis.
 rus, *see* patria.

S

sed—autem. See Lesson 64.
 seges, *see* fructus.
 sidus, *see* astrum.
 sileo, *I utter no sound, am still*; taceo, *I utter no word, am mute*.
 sive, suggests one of two alternatives (317); utrum, asks the first part of a double question (299).
 specto, *see* cerno.
 stella, *see* astrum.

T

taceo, *see* sileo.
 timeo, *see* metuo.

U

unus, *see* quidam.
 utrum, *see* sive.

V

vereor, *see* metuo.
 vir, *see* homo.
 vitium, *see* culpa.

QUESTIONS IN SYNTAX.

The letters *N. S.* refer to the *Notes on Syntax* in the "*Public School Latin Primer*," pp. 132-146.

1. What is Flexion or Inflection? (2).
2. What are the Oblique Cases? (5). Why so called? (*L. P.* p. 174).
3. What is the Stem of a word? (8). By what other name is it called? *Ans. Crude Form.*
4. What is the character? (8).
5. Give a rule for the ending of the Genitive Plural of Nouns of 3rd Declension (p. 3, note).
6. Give the Accusative endings in the Singular Number (14).
7. How is the Accusative formed? (15).
8. How is the Stem of a Noun found? (16).
9. Give General Rules for the Gender of Nouns Substantive (19, 20). What is a *Common Noun*?
10. What are the Neuter endings of the 3rd Declension? (Appendix, X, C.)
11. What do you mean by *Agreement* of Adjective and Substantive? (23, 24).
12. When is '*to*' never the sign of the Dative? (31).
13. When are '*by*' and '*with*' translated by *a* or *ab*, and *cum*? (37).
14. Give the Plural endings of the five Declensions (40).
15. To what Declension do Adjectives in *-is* belong? How do they form the Ablative Singular? (42).
16. Explain *Finite Verb, Conjugation, Tense* (p. 14, note).
17. What is the *Subject*? In what case does the Subject of a Finite Verb stand? (47). What must be taken as the Subject when no Nominative is expressed? (48).
18. What are Transitive and Intransitive Verbs? (55). How are Verbs of 3rd Conjugation ending in *-io* conjugated? (Appendix, XXI; *L. P.* § 63).
19. How may Adjectives be used *Substantively*? (75).
20. When do *in* and *sub* govern the Accusative? When the Ablative? (77).

21. How must 'not' with an Imperative be translated? (194). What word must stand before 'not' in English? [The 'do' of the Imperative.]

22. What do you mean by the Ablative of the Instrument? (37, 249).

23. When is one Noun said to be in *Apposition* to another? In what case does the *Apposition-Noun* stand? (209).

24. What case is governed by compounds of *sum*? (240). What exception is there? [*Possum*.]

25. When 'thing' or 'things' is left out, in what gender must the Adjective be put? (75).

26. What case follows the Verb 'to be'? (117).

27. How does the Aorist differ in meaning from the Perfect? (94).

28. Are 'he is come,' 'he was come,' 'he is fallen,' 'they are arrived,' *Passive*? To what tenses are they to be referred? (93, 155).

29. What does the English Infinitive often express, but the Latin Infinitive *never*? [*A purpose*.]

30. In how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? (Diff. of Idiom, 25.)

31. Give the rules for the Consecution of Tenses (182).

32. When is 'that' a sign of the Infinitive? (160).

33. How are the Supines used? (137—140).

34. How is the want of a Perfect Participle Active supplied? [By *cum* with Perfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive, or by the *Ablative Absolute*.]

35. What is the Ablative Absolute?

36. In what case is the *Agent* put?

37. What do you mean by the Locative Case? What forms of the Locative still survive?

38. What do you mean by Periphrastic Conjugation?

39. By what cases may 'of the greatest valour' be translated into Latin? [Genitive or Ablative of Quality.]

40. Where is *cum* placed with the Ablative of certain Pronouns?

41. What Verbs govern the Genitive?

42. What Verbs govern the Ablative?

43. What Verbs govern the Dative? (240).

44. How is the Future Infinitive Passive formed? [With *iri*, 'there is a going,' and the Supine in *-um*. The Supine remains unchanged (150). If, however, the Verb has no Supine, 'fore ut' with Subjunctive is used. (L. P. § 69, B.)]

45. What is the construction of *pœnitet*, *pudet*, etc.?

46. How are 'ought' and 'might' translated when they are principal Verbs?

47. What Verbs take a double Accusative? What is a *Cognate Accusative*?

48. What is the only way in which Intransitive Verbs, or Verbs governing a Dative, can be used in the Passive Voice?

49. How is the English Pluperfect Indicative to be translated after 'if'? (212).

50. Which are the *Primary*, and which are the *Historic* Tenses?

51. When is the Preposition *ad*, 'to,' used? [After *come*, *send*, etc.]

52. In what case is a point of time (*time when*) put? How do you express *Duration of Time*?

53. What is the construction of Verbs of *fearing* and *hindering*?

54. When do you use *nē* for 'that not'? When '*ut non*'?

55. What is the Prolative Infinitive?

56. How may '*having*' be translated?

57. What is Gerundive Attraction?

58. How may the case of the Relative be determined? (168).

59. What is the rule for the Comparison of Adverbs?

60. How may a sentence with an Active Verb be changed into the Passive Construction? (84, 85).

61. In what case does a noun of *price* stand when it answers the question, '*for how much*'? (256).

62. How is '*must*' translated? [By the Gerundive.]

63. When is '*for*' to be translated by the Accusative? (218). When by the Ablative? (257).

APPENDIX.

TABLE OF ENDINGS OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

		<i>Singular.</i>				
	<i>Nom. Voc.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	
1st Decl.,	-ā	-am	-æ	-æ	-ā	
2nd Decl.,	-us, -er, (-um <i>neut.</i>)	-um	-i	-o	-o	
3rd Decl.	{ e, x, a, l, t } . { s, c, o, r, n } .	{ -em } { -im }	-is	-ī	-ġ*	
4th Decl.,	-us (-u <i>neut.</i>) .	-um	-ūs	-ūi	-ū	
5th Decl.,	-ēs	-em	ēi	-ēi	-ē	

		<i>Plural.</i>			
1st Decl.,	-æ	-as	-ārum	-is	
2nd Decl.,	-i (ā <i>neut.</i>) .	-ōs (ā <i>neut.</i>)	ōrum	-is	
3rd Decl.,	-ēs	ēs	{ -um } { -ium }	ibus	
4th Decl.,	ūs	us	-ūum	{ ibus } { ūbus }	
5th Decl.,	ēs	ēs	-ērum	-ēbus	

Obs. (a) The Nom. and Voc. are alike, except in singular nouns of the 2nd Decl. ending in *-us*. These make Voc. in *-e*, as *dōmīnē*.

(β) In *Neuter Nouns* the Nom. Voc. and Acc. are alike; and these cases in the Plural always end in *ā*.

II. *Dēā*, a goddess, makes Dat. Abl. Plural *deābus*. *Filius*, a son, and Proper Names ending in *-us*, make Voc. in *i*; as, *fīlī*, *Mercurī*. *Dēus*, God, makes Voc. *Dēus*.

III. Neuters of 3rd Decl. ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, make Abl. Sing. in *-i*; Nom. Plural in *-ia*; Gen. Plural in *-ium*.

Obs. *baccar*, *far*, *jūbar*, *nectar*, make Abl. in *-ē*.

IV. (A) The following Nouns of 3rd Decl. have *-i* only in Abl. Sing. :—

sēcūris, *tussis*, *sītis*, *vis*,
and river-names which end in *-is*.

Obs. These Nouns make Acc. Sing. in *-im*.

* Sometimes *-i* (see App. III, IV).

- (B) The following make *-im* or *-em* in Acc. Sing., and most make *-i* or *-e* in Abl. :—

febris, pelvis, puppis, navis,
turris, *also* restis, clavis.

Obs. Sēcūris makes Acc. *-im* or *-em* ; Abl. always *-i*.

messis " " " " Abl. always *-e*.

restis " " " " Abl. always *-e*.

- (C) The following make *-em* in Acc. Sing., and *-i* or *-e* in Abl. :—

amnis, āvis, axis, classis,
with civis, finis, fustis, *too* ;
ignis, imber, orbis, unguis,
and Months in -er the selfsame do.

Obs. Many Adjectives used as Substantives have Abl. *-i* or *-e* ; but mostly *-i*.

- V. The following Nouns of 3rd Decl. make *-ium* in Gen. Plural. :—

A. Parisyllabic * Nouns in *-es*, *-is*, *-er*.

Exceptions.—vates, proles, senex, panis,
frater, mater, pater, canis,
accipiter and juvenis,
and often apis, vōlūcris.

B. Nouns ending in *-s* or *-x* preceded by a Consonant.
Except *-ps* and *cælebs*.

C. Monosyllabic Nouns.

Exceptions.—crus, mus, laus, pes, grex, lex, rex, flos,
fax, Thrax, vox, Phryx, dux, nux, Tros, mos.

Obs. (a) *Fraus* has both *fraudtum* and *fraudum*.

(β) The Genitives Plural of *cor*, *cos*, *rus*, *sal*, *sol*, *vas* (vādis)
do not occur. (Madvig, § 44.)

D. Neuters in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*. (See above, III.)

VI. The 4th Declension is a contracted form of the 3rd Decl. Thus, *fructus* (Gen. Sing.) is a contraction of *fructu-is* ; *fructu* (Abl. Sing.) a contraction of *fructu-a*. Similarly, the Dat. Sing. ending *-ūi* is often contracted into *-ū*.

Obs. (a) Neuters in *-ū* have Gen. Sing. in *-ūa*.

" " Dat. Abl. " *-ū*.

" " N.V. Acc. Plur. in *-ūa*.

" " Gen. " *-ūum*.

" " Dat. Abl. " *-ūbus* or *-ibus*.

* See § 13, note.

(β) The following have mostly Dat. Abl. Plural in *-ibus* :—

artūs, * partus, * portus, ācus,
arcus, * quercus, spēcus, lācus ;
to these join veru (spit) and tribus,
like ācus it renounces *-ibus*.

VII. Dōmus, a house, is peculiar, and is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. V.	domus.	domūs.
Acc.	domum.	domūs or domōs.
Gen.	domūs.	domūum or domōrum.
Dat.	domūi.	domībus.
Abl.	domo.	domībus.

* * Hence the memorial lines,—

Sperne *-mē, -mū, -mī, -mīs,*
Si declinare '*domus*' vis.†

Obs. Domī is the *Locative Case* (§ 261). Thus, '*domi*,' at home ;
'domi meæ,' at my house.

VIII. In the 5th Decl. the *e* of Gen. and Dat. Sing. is doubtful ;
but it is generally *long* if it follows a vowel, as *ficiētī* ; *short*, if it
follows a consonant, as *fidiētī*.

Obs. The Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plural are seldom found, except in
the words *dies, res*, which are the *only two* nouns of this Decl. *fully*
declined.

IX.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>2nd Decl.</i>			
<i>1st Decl.</i>					
Nom.	mensā	domīnus	puer	magister	bellum
Voc.	mensā	dominē	puer	magister	bellum
Acc.	mensam	dominum	puerum	magistrum	bellum
Gen.	mensæ	dominī	puerī	magistrī	bellī
Dat.	mensæ	dominō	puero	magistro	bello
Abl.	mensā	dominō	puero	magistro	bello
<i>Plural.</i>					
N. V.	mensæ	dominī	puerī	magistrī	bellā
Acc.	mensas	dominos	pueros	magistros	bellā
Gen.	mensarum	dominorum	puerorum	magistrorum	bellorum
Dat.	} mensis	dominīs	puerīs	magistrīs	bellīs
Abl.					

* Three Nouns of 3rd Declension, *ars, pars, arx*, make Dat. Abl. Plur. *artibus, partibus, arcibus*, respectively. Hence the need of the distinction.

† Reject (the endings) *-mæ, -mū, -mī, -mīs*, if you wish to decline '*domus*.'

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>3rd Decl.</i>		<i>4th Decl.</i>		<i>5th Decl.</i>
N. V.	nubes	labor	carmen	gradus	genu	dies
Acc.	nubem	labōrem	carmen	gradum	genu	diem
Gen.	nubis	labōris	carmīnis	gradūs	genūs	diēi
Dat.	nubī	labōrī	carmīni	gradūi	genūi	diēi
Abl.	nubē	labōrē	carmīne	gradū	genū	diē
<i>Plural.</i>						
N. V. }	nubes	labōres	carmīnā	gradus	genūā	dies
Acc. }						
Gen. }	nubium	labōrum	carmīnum	graduum	genuum	diērum
Dat. }						
Abl. }	nubibus	labōribus	carmīnibus	gradibus	genibus	diēbus

Obs. The following are irregular :—

Deus,	{	<i>God. Voc. Deus. Nom. and Dat. plur. generally take i for e. Dii or Di; Diis or Dis.</i>
Jupiter,	{	<i>Jupiter. G. Jovis, etc.</i>
Bos,	{	<i>bull, cow, ox. G. bovis; G. pl. boum; D. bōbus or būbus.</i>
Respublica,	{	<i>republic, commonwealth. G. reipublicæ, etc.; the substantive res, and the adj. publica in agreement with it.</i>
Jusjurandum,	{	<i>oath. G. jurisjurandi, etc.; jus neut., with the partic. jurandum in agreement.</i>
Vis,		<i>strength: —, vim, vi; vires, virium, viribus.</i>
Vir,		<i>man: vīri, etc., as 2nd: vīri, vīrōrum, etc.</i>

Aër, æther, have Greek acc. *ætra, æthëra*.

X. GENDER OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

A. 1st DECLENSION. **Feminine**, except names of men and designations of men.

B. 2nd DECLENSION. **Masculine**, ending in *-us* or *-er*.
Neuter, ending in *-um*.

Exceptions—

Neuter Nouns that end in *-us*,

Are *virus, vulgus, pēlagus*.

Vulgus masculine is rare.

Feminine eight Nouns declare,

alvus, arctus, carbæus,

cōlus, hūmus, pampīnus,

dōmus, vannus; and with these

Names of Jewels, Plants, and Trees.

1. 3rd DECLENSION. (α) **Masculine**, ending in *-er, -or, -os, -o,**
and *-es* increasing in the Genitive.

Exceptions—

- er) Many Neuters end in *-er*,
ūter, ūber, verber, ver,
With Plants, as *ūcer* and *pāpāver*,
Sīler, tūber; add *cādāver*.
- or) Neuters there are four in *-or*,
ador, æquor, marmor, cor.
One a Feminine we see,
arbor, arbōris (a tree).
- os) Feminine are *cos* and *dos*;
Greek Nouns are Neuter, so is *os*.†
- o) *Ēchō* a Feminine we call,
With *cārō* (carnis): these are all.
- es, increasing) Of *-es* increasing, Neuter *æs*
Is found, but Feminine are these—
merces, merges, quies, sēges;
compes add, and also *lēges*.

(β) **Feminine**, ending in *-do, -go, -io, ‡*

- „ *-as, aus, -is*.
- „ *-es*, not increasing.
- „ *-s*, after a consonant.
- „ *-x*.

Exceptions—

- do, -go, -io) *cardo, ordo, prædo*, three,
Masculine in *-do* we see.
līgo, margo, vespertilio,
Are Masculine, besides *pāpilio*,
curculio, stellio, pūgio, unio,
scipio, septentrio, opilio, senio,
With other Substantives that show
A number, as *quaternio*.
- as) Six Masculines we find in *-as*,
vās (vādis), ūlphas, and mās,
ās (assis), gīgās, ādāmas,
Vās (vāsis) noted is to be,
And *fās*, with *nēfās*, Neuters three.
- aus) No exceptions.

* When not *-do, -go, -io*. See Feminine endings (β).

† (1) *ōs, ossis, a bone*; (2) *ōs, ōris, mouth*.

‡ Abstract Nouns in *-io* are all Feminine.

-is) (1) *Parisyllabic*.

Many Nouns we find in -is

Masculini generis :—

amnis, anguis, axis, collis,
callis, caulis, civis,* foliis,*
crinis, finis, fascis, cānis,**
fānis, fustis, ignis, pānis,*
hostis, potis, orbis, ensis,*
piscis, scutis, testis,* mensis,*
torquis, unguis, and canālis,*
*vectis, vermis, and sodālis.**

Obs. Those marked (*) are common : *finis* is rarely
 Feminine, and that only in the Singular.

(2) *Imparisyllabic*.

civis, ūpis, cūctūmis,
pulvis, sanguis, semis, glis.†

-es) Masculine are two in -es,
verres and *ācināctis*.

Obs. *vātes, vēpres*, are common.

-s, after a } Masculine are *fons* and *mons*,
 consonant } *dedrans, quadrans, triens, pons,*
dens, with compounds *videns,† tridens,*
ādeps, forceps, cūens, torrens;
 And to these add *confūens,*
ūriens, rūdens, occidens.‖

Obs. *ādeps, forceps*, are sometimes Feminine.

-x) Most are Masculine in -ax,
 But Feminine are *forfex, lex,* }
pellex, stipellēx, fœx, and nex. }
 Three are Masculine in -ix,
phanix, fornix, and edlix.
 Masculine are -ax and -unx,
 As *thōrax, deunx, and quincunx.*

(γ) Neuter, ending in -a, -e, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.

Six Neuter endings of Declension 8

In the word '*lancet*' you may plainly see.

But don't forget to Neuters to refer

Three other endings, -ar and -us and -ur.

* Add, *corbis, clunis, torris, annālis* (*Ūber* understood), and
mōlāris (*dens, or lapis* understood). *Corbis* is common.

† Add *vomis*.

‡ *videns*, 'a hoe,' is Masc.; *videns*, 'a sheep,' is Fem.

‖ Add *chālybs, gryps, hŷdrops*.

Exceptions—

- l) Masculine are *sāl* and *consul*,
mūgil, *pūgil*, *sāl* and *exsul*.
- n) The Masculines that end in -n
Are names of men, as *tūbicn*;
To such add *delphn*, *attāgēn*,
With *lēn*, *pectēn*, *rēn*, and *splēn*.
- ar) Masculine is found in -ar,
*par** (a comrade), also *lar*.
- ur) The five that are found Masculine in -ur,
Are *augur*, *furfur*, *turtur*, *vultur*, *fur*.
- us) (α) Two are Masculine in -us,
lēpus (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*.
(β) These are Feminine in -us,
juventus, *virtus*, *servitus*,
senectus, *tellus*, *incus*, *sālus*,
With *pecus*† (*pecūdis*) and *pālus*‡.

D. 4th DECLENSION. Masculine, ending in -us.
Neuter, ending in -u.

Exceptions—

- us) These are Feminine in -us,
ācus, *dōmus*, *orthus*,
idūs, *nīrus*, *sōcrus*, *ānus*,
tribus, names of Trees, and *mānus*.

E. 5th DECLENSION. Feminine, ending in -es.

Exception—

Mēridies is Masculine, and so
Is *dies* in Plurāli numero.

Obs. *Dies* in the Sing. is Common, but mostly
Masc. when it means 'a day.' When it
means 'time,' or a fixed day, it is almost
always Feminine.

* *Par*, 'a pair,' is Neuter.

† *Pecus*, *pecūdis*, 'a beast' (generally a sheep); but *pecus*, *pecōris*,
'cattle,' is Neuter.

‡ Add *rus* and *grus*; but these are sometimes Masculine.

XI.

ADJECTIVES.

(A) Those which end in *us*, *ŕ*, *um*, or in *er*, *ŕ*, *um*, and follow the 1st and 2nd Declensions. Thus,

1. Bonus, good.			2. Tener, tender.		
<i>2nd (Masc.).</i>	<i>1st.</i>	<i>2nd (Neut.).</i>	<i>2nd (Masc.).</i>	<i>1st.</i>	<i>2nd (Neut.).</i>
N. bonus,	bonŕ,	bonum.	tŕner,	tŕnerŕ,	tŕnerum.
Acc. bonum,	bonam,	bonum.	tenerum,	teneram,	tenerum.
Gen. boni,	bonŕ,	boni.	teneri,	tenerŕ,	teneri.
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Or,			Or,		
Unus, one.			Œger, sick.		
N. unus,	unŕ,	unum.	ŕger,	ŕgrŕ,	ŕgrum.
Acc. unum,	unam,	unum.	ŕgrum,	ŕgram,	ŕgrum.
Gen. unius,*	unius,	unius.	ŕgri,	ŕgrŕ,	ŕgri.
Dat. unī,	unī,	unī.	etc.	etc.	etc.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns make Gen. Sing. in *-ŕus*, and Dat. in *-i*:—

ille, ipse, iste, nullus,
solus, totus, unus, ullus;
 Also *alius, alter, uter,*
Uter's Compounds five, and *neuter*.

Obs. Ille, iste, alius, make Neuter Nom. Acc. Sing. *illud, istud, aliud* (XVI.). *Alter* keeps *ŕ* throughout. Thus, *alter, altŕa, altŕum; alterius*, etc.

(B) Those which have endings like the 3rd Declension, and follow its Inflexions (*L. P.* § 32, 33).

1. Adjectives in *is*.

These have Abl. Sing. in *i*. Neuter N. V. Acc. in *ŕ*.
 Gen. Pl. in *ium*. „ „ *ia*.

2. Comparatives in *or*.

These have Sing. Abl. in *ŕ* or *i*. Neuter N. V. Acc. in *-us*.
 Pl. Gen. in *um*. „ „ *ŕ*.

The Abl. Sing. in *ŕ* is the more common form.

3. Adjectives in *us, ns, rs*, and Participles in *ans, ens*.

These have Sing. Abl. in *ŕ* or *i*. Neuter N. V. Acc. unaltered.
 Pl. Gen. in *ium*. „ „ in *ia*.

The Abl. Sing. of Adjectives rarely ends in *ŕ*. With Participles the ending in *ŕ* is more common. The Ablative Participle used Absolutely (265) always ends in *ŕ*.

* The quantity of the *i* is doubtful in all except *alius* (= *alĭus*), *alterius*, *utrius*.

4. Adjectives like *acer* (80).

These have Nom. Masc. in *er* }
 „ Fem. „ *is* } otherwise like Adjectives in *is*.
 „ Neut. „ *re* }

Like *acer* are declined—

ălăcer,	cēler,	pedester,	silvester,
campester,	equester,	puter,	terrester,
cělēber,	paluster,	salūber,	völūcer,

with names of Months, as *September*.

Obs. *Cēler* alone retains *e* throughout. Thus, *celer*, *cělēris*, *cělēre*.

XII. The following Adjectives have Abl. Sing. in *ē* only:—

coelebs, princeps, deses, compos,
superstes, pauper, puber, impos.

So (almost always), *ales, dives, uber, vētus*. But *par* and *mēmor* make Abl. in *i*.

These Adjectives, with the exception of *par*, have no Neuter Plural.

XIII. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

A. Adjectives ending in *-ācus*, *-ficus*, and *-vōlus*.

These form Comparative in *-entior* and Superlative in *-entissimus*, as if from the Participles of *dico*, *facio*, and *volo*, from which they are derived. Thus, *maledīcus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*.

Obs. *ēgēnus*, *prōvidus*, are similarly compared.

B. Adjectives ending in *-us pure*, i.e. *-us* preceded by a vowel.

These have no Comparatives or Superlatives of their own; but the *Positive* is used with *māgis*, 'more,' for the Comparative, and with *maximē*, 'most,' for the Superlative. Thus, *arduus*, *magis arduus*, *maximē arduus*.

[For a full list, and for Comparison of Adverbs, see *L. P.* § 36, 37].

XIV. *Plus*, more (Compar. of *multus*), has only Nom. Acc. and Gen. Neuter in the Singular; *plus, pluris*.* In the Plural we have

	M. F.	N.
N. A.	<i>plures</i>	<i>plurā</i>
Gen.	<i>plurium</i>	
Dat. Abl.	<i>pluribus</i>	

* Gen. of *Price* or *Value* (226).

XV. Dŭō, *two*, and trēs, *three*, are thus declined :—

	M.	F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duas	duo	tres	triā
Acc.	duos (duo)	duas	duo	tres	tria
Gen.	duorum	duarum	duorum	trium	trium
Dat. Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

Like *duo* is declined '*ambo*,' *both*.

Obs. The Cardinal Numbers, from *quattuor*, 'four,' to *centum*, 'a hundred' (inclusive), are undeclined. *Mille*, 'a thousand,' is an Adjective undeclined. '*Millia*,' *thousands*, is a Neut. Plural Substantive of 3rd Decl. (*L. P.* § 22 (b)), and is followed by a Genitive. Thus, 'mille oves,' 1000 *sheep*; 'tria millia ovium,' 3000 *sheep* (lit. 'three thousands of sheep').

XVI.

PRONOUNS.

A. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(a) 1st Person, Ego, *I*.

(b) 2nd Person, Tu, *thou* (you).

Singular.		Plural.	Singular.		Plural.
Nom.	ĕgo	nōs	Nom. Voc. tu	tu	vos
Acc.	mē	nōs	Acc.	tē	vos
Gen.	mei	nostrī or nostrum *	Gen.	tui	vestri or vestrum *
Dat.	mihī	nōbis	Dat.	tibi	vōbis
Abl.	mē	nōbis	Abl.	tē	vōbis

B. REFLEXIVE (3rd Person).

Singular and Plural.

Nom.	(none).
Acc.	sē or sēsē (especially if referring to a <i>Plural</i> Nom.).
Gen.	sui
Dat.	sibi.
Abl.	sē or sēsē.

The suffix *-met* is often added to cases of the Personal Pronouns (except *tu* and the *Genitives* Plural), with or without cases of *ipse*. Thus, *egomet*, *sibimet*, *nosmet ipsos*.

C. POSSESSIVE.

(1) Like '*bonus*.'

meus, mea, meum, *my, mine*.

suus, sua, suum, *his, her* (hers), *its, their* (theirs); *his, her, its, their* own.

tuus, tua, tuum, *thy, thine* (your).

* *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used with *partitive* adjectives (*which, both, some*), including *comparatives* and *superlatives*. They are also used with Gen. Pl. *omnium* in agreement. Thus, *Uter nostrum, which of us?* *Vestrum omnium voluntas, the will of you all.*

(2) Like '*niger*.'

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours.*
 vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours.*

Obs. '*Meus*' makes *mi* Sing. Voc. Masc. *Suus* and *tuus* have no Vocative.

D. DEMONSTRATIVE.

(1) *Unemphatic*. '*Is*,' *that (he, she, it)*; antecedent to '*qui*.'

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom. Sing.	is	ea	id	Plur.	ii	eas	ěā
Acc.	eum	eam	id		eos	eas	ěā
Gen.	eius	eius	eius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ei (<i>all genders</i>)				iis or eis (<i>all genders</i>)		
Abl.	eo	eā	eo		iis or eis (<i>all genders</i>)		

(2) *Emphatic*.(a) '*Hic*,' *this (near me)*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom. Sing.	hic	hæc	hoc	Plur.	hi	hæc	hæc
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc		hōs	hās	hæc
Gen.	hujus				hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic				his		
Abl.	hoc	hac	hoc		his		

(b) '*Ille*,' *that (near him), yonder*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom. Sing.	ille	illā	illud	Plur.	illi	illæ	illā
Acc.	illum	illam	illud		illos	illas	illā
Gen.	illius				illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi				illis		
Abl.	illo	illā	illo		illis		

(c) '*Iste*,' *that (near you), that of yours*; declined like '*Ille*.'

E. DEFINITIVE.

(1) '*Idem*,' *the same*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	idem	ěādem	idem		iidem	eādem	eādem
Acc.	eundem	*eandem	idem		eosdem	easdem	eādem
Gen.	eiusdem				eorundem*	earundem	eorundem
Dat.	eidem				iisdem or eisdem		
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		iisdem or eisdem		

(2) '*Ipsē*,' *-self (myself, thyself, himself, itself, etc.)*. It is declined like '*ille*' above; except that it has Singular Nom. Acc. neuter '*ipsum*.'

* '*m*' before *d* is changed into '*n*.'

F. RELATIVE. 'Qui,' *who, which, that (as).* ' .

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom. Sing.	qui	quæ	quod	Plur.	qui	quæ	quæ
Acc.	quem	quam	quod		quos	quas	quæ
Gen.	cujus				quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	cui				quibus or quæis		
Abl.	quo	quâ	quo		quibus or quæis		

Obs. The Prep. 'cum,' *with,* is written after, and forms one word with the Abl. of the Relative. Thus, *quocum, quibuscum.*

G. INTERROGATIVE. 'Quis,' *who? what?*

	M.	F.	N.	
Nom. Sing.	quis	quæ	quid	Plur. declined like the Relative.
Acc.	quem	quam	quid	
Gen. }	like the Relative.			
Dat. }				
Abl. }				

Obs. The forms 'quis,' 'quid,' are used as *Substantives*. If the Interrogative Pronoun is *Adjectival*, i.e. if it agrees with a Substantive, the form is *qui, quæ, quod*, etc. exactly like the Relative (161).

H. INDEFINITE. 'Quis,' *any (nō quis, num quis, si quis).*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom. Sing.	quis	quæ	quid	Plur.	qui	quæ	quæ or quæ
Acc.	quem	quam	quid		quos	quas	quæ or quæ

In the other cases declined like the Relative (F, above).

Obs. As in the case of the Interrogative, the forms 'quis,' 'quid,' are *Substantival*. If the Pronoun agrees with a Substantive, the form is *qui, quæ, quod*, like the Relative; except *quæ* or *quæ* in Neut. Plural. The rule, however, is liable to exceptions.

XVII. The Compounds of *qui, quis*, follow the declension of those Pronouns. The suffix or prefix (marked in *italics*) accompanies each case without alteration.

Qui-dam,	<i>a certain one.</i> (m before d is changed into n.)*
Qui-vis,	<i>any you please.</i>
Qui-libet,	
Quis-quam,	<i>any; any single one (when it is denied that there are any).</i>
Aliquis,	<i>any; some (though not much or many: ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod. Neut. pl. -qua).</i>
Qui-nam,	<i>who then? what then? (Emphatic.)</i>
Quis-nam,	
Quis-piam,	<i>some, somebody.</i>
Quis-que,	<i>each, of several. (Unusquisque, each one.)</i>

* Thus *quemdam, quorundam*, become *quendam, quorundam*. (Cf. XVI, E, *idem*.)

Quisquis,	{ whoever; (used without a Substantive: neut. quicquid).*
Qui-cunque,	whoever; whatever (used with a subst.).
Ecquis?	{ (does) any? (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always ecqua. It expects the answer none.)
Num quis?	(does) any? (It expects the answer no.)
Uter,	{ which (of two): uterque, each (utrâque, utrumque; G. -iusque).
Alius (a, ud),	{ another; other. (When alius is used twice in a sentence, the first is construed 'some.')
Alter,	the other (of two); another; one more.
Talis,	such; antecedent to qualis (as).
Tantus,	so great; antecedent to quantus (as).
Tot,	so many; antecedent to quot (as).

Obs. 'Quid' is often written *quic* before 'q.' Thus *quicquam* (quidquam); *quicquid* (quidquid).

XVIII. The Auxiliary Verb, 'sum,' *I am*, is thus conjugated:—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres.	sum	ēs	est	sūmus	estis	sunt
Fut. Sim.	ēro	ēris	erit	ērīmus	ērītis	erunt
Perf. Def.	fui	fuisti	fuit	fuīmus	fuistis	fuērunt †
Fut. Perf.	fuēro	fuēris	fuērit	fuerīmus	fuerītis	fuērint

HISTORIC TENSES.

	1	2	3	1	2	3
Imperfect,	eram	eras	erat	erāmus	erātis	erant
Prefect Indef. or Aorist,	fui	fuisti	fuit	fuīmus	fuistis	fuērunt ‡
Pluperfect,	fuēram	fuēras	fuērat	fuerāmus	fuerātis	fuerant

CONJUNCTIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRIMARY TENSES.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Pres. Sing.	sis	sis	sit	Plur.	simus	sitis	sint
Perf. „	fuērim	fuēris	fuērit		fuerīmus	fuerītis	fuerint

HISTORIC TENSES.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Imperf. essem †	esses	esset			essēmus	essētis	essent
Pluperf. fuissem	fuissem	fuisset			fuissēmus	fuissētis	fuissent

* Only found in Nom. Acc. Sing. M. N.; Abl. Sing. M. F. N.; Dat. Abl. Plural.

† Or *fuērē*.

‡ Another form is *fōrem*, *fores*, *foret*; *forēmus*, *forētis*, *forent*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Present Sing. (<i>none</i>)	ēs	esto	esto		estē	estōte	sunto.

INFINITIVE. (Verb Infinite.)

Pres. and Imperf. esse	Gerunds and Supines, (<i>none</i>)
Perf. and Pluperf. fuisse	Present Participle, (<i>none</i>)*
Future, fore, or futurus esse	Future Participle, futurus

Obs. Like *sum* are conjugated its compounds *absum*, *adsum*, *dēsum*, *insum*, *intersum*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *prōsum*,† *subsum*, *super-sum*. For '*possum*' see XX, below.

XIX. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

- (a) '*Queo*,' *I can*, '*nequeo*,' *I cannot*, form their tenses like *eo* (XX, E), but have no Imperative, Future Participle, or Gerund.
- (b) '*Aio*,' *I say, affirm*, '*inquam*,'‡ *say, quoth*, have but few forms in common use.

Indicative Mood—

	Singular.				Plural.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
Present Tense, <i>aio</i>	ais	ait	ait		—	—	aiunt
„ „ <i>inquam</i>	inquis	inquit	inquit		inquimus	inquitis	inquunt
Imperfect „ <i>aiēbam</i>	aiēbas	aiēbat	aiēbat		aiēbāmus	aiēbātis	aiēbant
„ „ <i>inquisibam</i>	-bas	-bat	-bat		-bāmus	-bātis	-bant

For remaining forms, and for *cepi*, *I begin*, *mēmīni*, *I remember*, *odi*, *I hate*, etc. etc. see L. P. § 74.

XX. IRREGULAR OR ANOMALOUS || VERBS.

A. '*Possum*,' *I am able, I can*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
Pres. Ind. <i>possum</i>	potes	potest	potest		possumus	potestis	possunt
Imperf. „ <i>pot-eram</i>	-eras	-erat	-erat		-erāmus	-erātis	-erant
Pres. Subj. <i>possim</i>	possis	possit	possit		possimus	possitis	possint
Imperf. „ <i>possem</i>	posses	posset	posset		possēmus	possētis	possent

* But *absum*, *præsum*, *possum*, make *absens*, *præsens*, *potens*, respectively.

† *Prōsum* takes *d* before *e*. Thus, *prōsum*, *prōdes*, *prōdest*, *prōsumus*, *prōdestis*, *prōsunt*.

‡ '*Inquam*' is used only when a person's actual words are given as spoken, and is always inserted parenthetically, as it were.

Not forming their parts according to rule.

Obs. 1. Possum is compounded of an Adjective, 'pōtis' (pote), *able*, and 'sum,' *I am* (XVIII.). Thus, *Potis-sum, pot-sum, possum*, etc. *Perfect, Pote-fui, pot-fui, potui*; and in like manner the tenses formed from the Perfect Stem. *Infim. Pot-esse, posse*; *Perf. pot-fuisse, potuisse. Participle, potens* (used as an Adjective).

Obs. 2. 'Possum' has no Imperative Mood.

B. 'Vōlo,' *I am willing, wish.* 'Nōlo' (non-volo), *I am unwilling.* 'Mālo' (māgis or māgē volo), *I wish rather, prefer.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
1	2	3	1	2	3	
Pres. Ind. {	vōlo	vis	vult	vōlūmus	vultis	vōlunt
	nōlo	nonvis	nonvult	nōlūmus	non vultis	nōlunt
	mālo	māvis	māvult	mālūmus	māvultis	mālunt
Perf. Ind.,			volui, nolui, malui.			
Pres. Subj.,	{	vël- nōl- māl-	{	-im, -is, -it; -imus, -itis, -int.		
Imperf. Subj.,	{	vell- noll- mall-	{	-em, -es, -et; ēmus, -ētis, -ent.		

Pres. and Imperf. Infim., velle, nolle, malle.

Obs. The remaining tenses are formed regularly. *Volo* and *malō* have no Imperative. *Nolo* has Imperative *nōli, nolite*; *nolito, nolitōte*. *Malo* has no Participle. The Supines are wanting.

C. 'Fēro,' *I bear.*

Singular.			Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3
Pres. Ind. Sing. fero fers* fert			Plur. fērimus fertis fērunt		
Pres. Subj. „ ferrem ferres ferret			„ ferrēmus ferrētis ferrent		

Obs. 1. Fero has Perf. Ind. *tūli*; Supine, *lātum*. Imperative, *fer, ferte*; *ferto, fertote, ferunto*. The remaining parts are formed regularly.

Obs. 2. In the Passive, *fero* makes *ferris* for *fērēris*, *fertur* for *fērtur*, and *ferrer* for *fērērer*.

D. 'Fio,' *I become, am made or done* (used as Passive of 'facio,' *I do or make*).

It is conjugated regularly, except that it makes Imperf. Subj. *fīerem* instead of *fīrem*, and an irregular Infim. *fīeri*.

Obs. 'Fio' forms its Perf., Pluperf., and Fut. Perf. with 'factus' and the auxiliary Verb 'sum' (eram, etc.).

* This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, etc.*, for *ferērem, ferēre*.

E. 'Eo,' I go.

	1	2	3		1	2	3
Pres. Ind. Sing.	eo	is	it	Plur.	imus	itis	eunt
Imperf. „ „	ibam	ibas	ibat	„	ibāmus	ibātis	ibant
Fut. Simple „ „	ibo	ibis	ibit	„	ibimus	ibitis	ibunt
Pres. Subj. „ „	eam	eas	eat	„	eāmus	eātis	eant

Obs. *Eo* is conjugated like a Verb of the 4th Conjugation in the remaining tenses. It has Perf. *ivi* (generally *ii* in the Compounds); and Imperative *i*, *ite*; *ito*, *itōte*, *eunto*. Gerunds, *eundum*, *eundi*, *eundo*. Participle, *iens*; Gen. *euntis*, etc.

F. 'Edo,' I eat. Perf., ēdi. Supine, ēsum.

	Singular.			Plural.		
Pres. Ind.	ēdo	{ ēdis ēs	ēdit est	ēdīmus	{ ēdītis estis	ēdunt edant
Pres. Subj.	{ edam edim	edas edis	edat edit	edāmus edīmus	edātis editis	edant edint
Imperf. „	{ edērem edēsem	edēres esses	ederet esset	edērēmus essēmus	edērētis essetis	edērent essent

Obs. *Edo* has Imperative *ēde*, *ēdite*, etc. regular, or *ea*, *este*; *esto*, *estote*. Infinitive, *ēdere*, or *esse*.

XXI. Verbs of 3rd Conjugation in *-io*.

Some Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation ending in *-io* keep this *i*, except before another *i*, before final *e*, and before *er* short. In other words, they keep the *i* in the tenses derived from the Present Stem,* except before another *i*; but drop it in the *Imperative*, *Imperfect Subjunctive*, and *Infinitive*.

Thus, Pres. Ind., *capi-o*, *cap-is*, *cap-it*; *cap-īmus*, *cap-ītis*, *capi-unt*. Imperf., *capiebam*. Fut., *capiam*. Imperative, *capē*, or *capito*. Imperf. Subj., *capērem*. Infin., *capere*.

Similarly are conjugated,

cupio, <i>desire</i>	jacio, <i>throw</i>
facio, <i>make</i>	pario, <i>bring forth</i>
fodio, <i>dig</i>	quatio, <i>shake</i>
fugio, <i>flee</i>	rapio, <i>seize</i>

with their compounds, and the compounds of *lacio*, *specio*, *e.g.*, *allicio*, *aspicio*, etc.

Obs. The Deponents, *gradior*, *I walk*, *morior*, *I die*, and *patior*, *I suffer*, follow the same rule. *Orior*, *I rise*, and *potior*, *I get possession of*, waver between the 3rd and 4th Conjugations (*L. P.* § 63).

* The Tenses derived from the Present Stem are—

The Present,	The Infinitive Present,
„ Imperfect,	„ Gerunds,
„ Fut. Simple,	„ Gerundive,
„ Imperative,	„ Participle Present. (<i>L. P.</i> § 47.)

XXII. DERIVED VERBS (L. P. § 71).

A. Desiderative Verbs, expressing desire or inclination, end in *-urio*; as, *esurio*, *I desire to eat, am hungry*.

They are of the 4th Conjugation.

B. Diminutive Verbs, expressing insignificant action, end in *-illo* (-illor); as, *cantillo*, *I sing a little song, quaver*.

They are of the 1st Conjugation.

C. Frequentative Verbs, expressing repeated action, end in *-so*, *-to*, or *-to*; as, *prenso* (from *prendo*), *I grasp*; *canto* (from *cano*), *I sing*; *territo* (from *terreo*), *I frighten*.

They are of the 1st Conjugation.

D. Inceptive or Inchoative Verbs, expressing beginning of action or condition, end in *-sco*; as, *mitesco*, *I grow mild*; *pallesco*, *I turn pale*; *obdormisco*, *I fall asleep*.

They are of the 3rd Conjugation; but their Perfects and Supines (if any) are the same as those of the Verbs from which they are derived. Those derived from Adjectives, however, form the Perfect in *-ui*.

XXIII. PREPOSITIONS.

A. Prepositions governing the Accusative.

Ad,	<i>to, at.</i>
Adversus,	<i>against, towards.</i> (See <i>erga</i> .)
Ante,	<i>before.</i>
Āpud,	{ <i>at</i> : before a plural name of persons, <i>amongst</i> . Apud me, ' <i>with me</i> ;' that is, ' <i>at my house</i> ;' apud Ro- manos, ' <i>amongst the Romans</i> .'
Circā,	<i>about</i> (of time and place).
Circum,	<i>about</i> (of place only).
Cis, citrā,	<i>on this side of.</i>
Contrā,	<i>against; over-against.</i>
Ergā,	{ <i>towards</i> (not of motion; but after words expressing a kind feeling, a duty, etc.).
Extrā,	{ <i>without</i> (in the sense of <i>not within</i>), <i>out of; beyond;</i> <i>outside.</i>
Infrā,	<i>beneath.</i>
Inter,	<i>amongst</i> (inter se, ' <i>to each other</i> '), <i>between.</i>
Intrā,	<i>within.</i>
Juxtā,	<i>close to; by.</i>
Ob,	<i>on account of</i> (ob oculos, <i>before one's eyes</i>).
Pōnēs,	<i>in the power of.</i>
Per,	<i>through; by means of.</i>
Pōnē,	<i>behind.</i>
Post,	<i>after.</i>
Præter,	<i>besides, beyond.</i>
Prōpe,	<i>near.</i>
Propter,	<i>near; on account of.</i>

Secundum,	<i>along; according to.</i>
Suprà,	<i>above.</i>
Trans,	<i>across, beyond; on the other side of.</i>
Ultrà,	<i>beyond.</i>
Usque,	<i>as far as (properly an adverb, used with <i>ad</i>).</i>

B. Prepositions governing the Ablative.

A, ab, abs,*	<i>from; by (before the doer of the action).</i>
Absquē,†	<i>without.</i>
Clam,	<i>without the knowledge of.</i>
Cōram,	<i>before; in the presence of.</i>
Cum,	<i>with.</i>
Dē,	<i>concerning, about (of, when it means about).</i>
E, ex,‡	<i>out of, from.</i>
Præ,	<i>before, in comparison with, owing to.</i>
Prō,	<i>for, instead of, in proportion to.</i>
Sinē,	<i>without (in the sense of not having).</i>
Tēnus,	<i>as far as. ('Tenus' follows its Noun, and with a Plural word may govern the Genitive.)</i>

The Prepositions which govern the Ablative only may be easily remembered thus:—

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,	}
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,	
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.	

Obs. A, ab, express *motion from, or origin*. E, ex, mean *from*, when 'from' = *out of*, or expresses *time, or cause*. Thus, *From east to west* (a, ab). They move the camp *from* that place. *From* that day I have never seen him. He died *from* his wounds (e, ex).

C. Prepositions governing two Cases.

(1) *With Accusative—*

In,	<i>into, towards, against,</i>	}
Sub,	<i>under, near to, up to,</i>	
Subter,	<i>beneath,</i>	
Super,	<i>beyond, over,</i>	

when *motion* is implied.

(2) *With Ablative—*

In,	<i>in,</i>	}
Sub,	<i>under,</i>	
Subter,	<i>beneath,</i>	
Super,	<i>over, upon, concerning,</i>	

when *position or rest* is implied.

* A before consonants; ab before vowels and h, and often before consonants; abs sometimes before c, q, t.

† Absque is rare.

‡ E before consonants; ex before vowels and h, and often before consonants.

VOCABULARY I.

English-Latin.

Throughout these Vocabularies the figures refer to the sections.

The letter *p* is prefixed when reference is made to a page.

Synonymes (pp. 169-171) are denoted by the letter S in brackets.

Thus (S.).

For Prepositions governing Acc. see pp. 191, 192; for those governing Abl. p. 192.

The Pres. Infin. only of Verbs is given. Inflexions will be found in Vocabulary II.

a (Indef.), quidam.

abandon, desérere, relinquere.

abide, commorari (dep.).

ability, ingenium.

able, to be, posse (117).

abound, abundare.

about (= concerning), de (prep.).

about (= around), circa; circum (prep.).

about (=nearly), fere (adv.), circiter.

above, super; supra (prep.).

abroad, militiae (261), foras (217).

absent, to be, abesse.

absent, absens.

abundance, copia.

abuse, vituperare.

accident, casus. *By accident*, casu (175).

accomplice, socius.

accomplish, conficere.

accordingly, itaque.

account; on — of, ob; propter (prep.).

account, an, ratio.

accustomed, to be, solere (156).

a certain, quidam.

ache, dolor.

across, trans (prep.).

act, agere.

active, acer (104).

acute, acutus.

add, addere.

admire, admirari (dep.).

adorn, ornare.

advantage, commodum.

advantageous, to be, commodum esse (243).

adverse, adversus. Res adversæ (pl.), adversity.

advise, consilium.

advise, monere (181); suadere (dat.).

advocate, patronus.

affair, res.

afford, præstare.

afraid, to be — of, metuere, timere.

after, post (prep.).

afterwards, postea.

again, iterum, rursus.

against, in (acc.), contra (acc.).

age, ætas.

agreeable, gratus.

agreed, it is, constat (161).

aid, auxilium.

aid, to, adjuvare.

aim-at, affectare.

air, aura.

alert, alacer.

all, omnis. *All* (=everybody), omnes, pl.

allow (= permit), sinere.

allowed, it is (= it is permitted), licet (281).

allowed fact, it is an, constat (161).

ally, socius.

almost, prope, pæne, fere.

alone, sôlus (105).

already, jam.

also, etiam.

alter, mutâre (311).

although, etsi, licet, quamvis, quum (cum), (302).

altogether, omnino.

always, semper.

ambassador, legâtus.

ambition, ambitio, gloria.

amid, amidst, } inter (prep.).

among, amongst, }

ancient, antiquus.

and, et; atque, ac; -que. (Ac is never used before a vowel.) (S.)

and not, nec, nêque. But see 194.

angry, irâtus.

angry, to be, irasci (dat.).

animal, ânimâl.

announce, nuntiâre.

another, aliûs. Another (of two), alter (105).

another man's, another's, aliênus.

answer, respondêre.

ant, formica.

anxiety, cura.

any, ullus. (After *ne, num, si*, 'any' is quis, 198.)

anybody, quisquam.

anywhere, usquam.

Apollo, Apollo, -înîs.

appear (= seem), vidêri (video).

appear (= show one's self), ap-pârêre.

approach, accêdêre, adîre (eo), advenîre, appropinquâre, ag-grêdi (dep.).

approve, probâre.

ardour, ardor, -ôrîs.

arise, orîri (dep.).

arm, armâre.

arms, arma, n. pl.

army, exercîtus.

around, circum (prep.).

arrival, adventus.

arrive, advênîre, pervênîre, with prep. ad.

art, ars.

as, ut. See also 209, 210.

as (after 'the same'), qui (174).

as if, quasi, tamquam (302).

as to (after 'so,' 'such'), ut (181).

as not to, ut non (185), quin (288).

as many as, quot.

as many as possible, quàm plurimi.

as — as possible, quàm before a superlative.

ashamed; am — of, pudet (234).

ask, rogare, pêtêre, querêre, interrogâre ('question').

ask-for, rogare, pêtêre.

ass, âsinus.

assemble, convôcâre (trans.), convênîre (intrans.), 311.

assert, affirmâre.

assist, adjûvâre.

assistance, auxilium.

at, sign of Locative (261).

Sometimes *apud* (prep.).

at a great price, magni (226).

at a little price, parvi (226).

at a very great price, maximi (226).

at all, omnino.

at hand, to be, adesse.

at last, at length, tandem.

Athenian, Atheniensis.

Athens, Athênæ, pl.

attached-to, amans; diligens (232).

attachment-to, studium (with gen.).

attack, aggrêdi (dep.), oppugnâre (of a town).

attain, pervênîre (with prep. ad).

attempt, conâri (dep.).

attendant, minister.

attention, diligentia.

attention, pay, ôpêram dare, studêre (dat.).

attentive, studiosus.

author, auctor.

authority, auctôrîtas.

avaricious, *avārus*.
avenger, *ultor*.
avoid, *vitāre*.
await, *expectāre*, *manēre*.
away, *to be*, *abesse*.

bad, *mālus*.
badly, *mālē*.
baſtle, *elūdēre*.
band (of men), *mānus*.
banish, *pellēre*.
bank, *ripa*.
barbarian, *barbārus*.
bare, *nudus*.
bark (of trees), *cortex*.
bark, *to*, *latrāre*.
barren, *stērilis*.
base, *turpis*.
battle, *pugna*, *praelium*.
battle-array, *acies*.
be, *to*, *esse*.
be-in-trouble, *labōrāre*.
beak, *rostrum*.
bear, *a*, *ursus*.
bear, *to*, *ferre* (p. 189).
beard, *barba*.
beaten, *to be*, *vāpūlāre* (250).
beautiful, *pulcer*.
beauty, *formōsitas*, *pulcritudo*.
because, *quod*, *quia*.
become, *fiēri* (App. XX).
becomes it, } *dēcet*.
befits it, }
becomes-not, *dēdēcet*.
bed, *cubile*.
bee, *āpis*.
before (adv.), *ante*, *antēā*, *prius*.
before (prep.), *ante*.
beg, *beg-for*, *orāre*.
begin, *cōpisse* (*L. P.* § 74); *incipere*.
behind, *pōnē* (prep.).
behold, *aspicere*, *spectare* (S.).
behoves, *it —*, *oportet* (281).
believe, *credere* (dat.).
bend, *flectere* (311).
beneath, *infra*.
benefit, *beneficium*.
besecms, see *becomes*.
beside, *besides*, *præter* (prep.).
besiege, *oppugnare*.

best, *optimus*.
better (adj.), *melior*; — (adv.), *melius*.
better, it is, *præstat* (impers.).
between, *inter*.
beware, *cavere*.
beyond, *ultra*, *super*.
bid, *jubere* (S.).
bigger, *major*.
bind, *vincere*.
bird, *avis*.
bit, *frēnum*.
bitter, *acerbus*.
black, *niger*.
blame, *culpa*.
blame, to, *culpāre*.
 blessing, *bonum*.
blind, *cæcus*.
blood, *sanguis*.
boast, *gloriarī* (dep.).
body, *corpus*.
bold, *audax*.
book, *liber*.
born, *to be*, *nasci* (dep.).
both — and, *et — et*.
bottom of, *imus* (211).
bough, *rāmus*.
bought, *emptus* (emo).
boundary, *finis*.
bounty, *bōnitas*.
boy, *puer*.
brave, *fortis*.
bravely, *fortiter*.
bravery, *fortitudo*.
brazen, *aenēus*.
break (trans.), *frangere*; (intrans.), *frangi* (311).
breeze, *aura*.
brief, *brēvis*. *Briefly*, *brēviter*.
bright, *clārus*.
bright, to be, *nitere*.
brightness, *nitōr*.
brim, *brink*, *margo*.
bring, *ferre*, *ducere*.
bring-back, *referre*, *reducere*.
Britain, *Britannia*.
broad, *latus*.
brook, *rivus* (S.).
brother, *frāter*.
build, *ædificare*. *To build* (of a city), *condere*.

bull, taurus.
burden, ōnus.
burn (trans.), cremāre, nrēre;
 (intrans.) ardēre; flagrāre (311).
bury, sepelire.
business, negōtium.
busy, sēdulus.
but, sed, at, autem, vero, verum
 (344).
but (= who — not), quin (288).
but (= except), nisi, prāter
 (prep.).
but yet, attāmen.
buy, ēmēre.
by (= near), prōpe, ad.
by (of the instrument), abl. alone;
 (of the agent), abl. with *a* or
ab (37).
by chance, cāsu, forte (175).

Cádiz, Gādes (pl.).
calamity, calāmitas.
call, vocāre, appellāre, dicēre.
call-back, revocāre.
call-together, convōcāre.
call-upon, convēnire (acc.).
camp, *a*, castrā (n., used only in
 pl.).
can, possum (117).
cannot, non possum, nequeo.
care, cura.
careless, negligens. With gen.,
 'careless about.'
carry, ferre, portāre, gērēre.
carry down, deferre.
Carthage, Carthāgo.
Carthaginian, Carthaginiensis.
cast-down, dejicēre, prācipitāre.
catch, capēre, excipēre.
cause, causa.
cautious, cautus.
cavalry, equitātus.
cave, caverna, antrum, spelunca.
cease, dēsīnēre (trans. and in-
 trans.).
celebrated, nōbilis, cēlēber.
centre of, medius (211).
certain, certus. *A certain man*,
 quidam.
certainly, certo; certe (at all
 events).

chain, catēna.
chance, cāsus.
change (trans.), mutāre; (intrans.)
 mutāri (311).
character, mores, pl. [mos].
chariot, currua.
cheaply, parvi (226).
cherish, fovēre.
chief, *a*, princeps.
chief (adj.) summus.
children, libēri (pl.).
choose, deligēre.
circumstance, res.
citadel, arx.
citizen, civis.
city, urbs.
clear, manifestus.
close, claudēre.
cloud, nubes.
cock, gallus.
cohort, cohors, -tis, f.
cold (subst.), frigus.
cold (adj.), frigidus.
colonist, colōnus.
come, vēnire.
come-down, descendēre.
come-up, advēnire, accēdēre.
coming, *a*, adventus.
command, *a*, imperium.
command, *to*, impērāre (dat., S.).
common, communis.
compared with, prae (prep.).
compel, cogēre.
complete, conficēre.
conceal, tēgēre.
conceal-from, cēlāre (216).
concerning, dē (prep.).
concerns, *it* (300).
confess, fatēri (dep.).
confidence, fiducia.
congratulate, grātūlāri (dep.).
conquer, vincēre.
conquered, victus (*part. vinco*).
conqueror, victor.
consequence, *it is of* (300).
considerably, aliquanto.
constancy, constantia.
constellation, astrum.
consul, consul.
consulship, consulātus (see, how-
 ever, 342).

- consult*, consŭlĕre. *With dat.* 'to consult for a person's interests.'
content, *contented*, contentus (abl.).
contrary, contrarius.
conversation, sermo.
converse, collŏqui (dep.).
corn, frumentum.
couch, cubile.
could, see *can*.
count, numĕrĕre.
courtenance, vultus.
country (= fatherland), patria.
country (opposed to town), rus (S.).
country, from the, rure (259).
country, in the, ruri (261).
country, into the, rus (217).
country-house, villa.
courage, fortitudo.
courageous, fortis. *Courageously*, fortiter.
course, cursus.
cover, tĕgere.
cowardly, timĭdus. *A coward*, timĭdus.
crane, grus.
craving for, avidus (with gen.).
create, creĕre.
crop, fruges (pl., S.).
cross, to, transire (-eo).
crow, cornix.
crown, to, cingĕre.
cruel, crudĕlis. *Cruelly*, crudĕliter.
cruelty, crudĕlĭtas.
cry out, clĕmĕre.
cultivate, colĕre.
cunning, vafer.
cup, pocŭlum.
curb, frĕnum.
cure, remedium.
cure, to, medĕri (dat. dep.).
custom, mos.
cut, cædĕre.
dance, saltĕre.
danger, pericŭlum.
dangerous, perĭculosus, asper.
dare, audĕre (156).
dark, obscŭrus.
daughter, filia.
day, dies.
dead, mortuus (moriŏr).
deaf, surdus.
dear, cĕrus.
death, mors.
debate, dispŭtare.
deceit, fraus.
deceitful, fallax.
deceive, fallĕre, decipĕre.
decide, judicĕre.
deep, altus, profundus.
defect, vitium.
defend, defendĕre.
delay, morĕri (dep.).
deliberate, deliberĕre.
delight, to, delectĕre.
delight, it delights, jŭvat (impers.).
Delphi, Delphi (pl.).
demand, flĕgĭtare.
denote, it denotes (225).
deny, negĕre.
depart, ab-ire (ab-eo), decĕdĕre.
deprive, spoliĕre.
descend, descendĕre.
describe, narrĕre.
desert, relinquĕre, desĕrĕre, ex-cedĕre ex.
deserve, merĕri (dep.).
deserving, dignus (abl.).
design, consilium.
desire, cŭpidĭtas, studium.
desire, to, cŭpĕre.
desirous, cŭpidus (gen.).
despise, spĕrnĕre, contemnĕre.
distitution, inŏpia.
destroy, perdĕre (S.), dĕlĕre.
destruction, pernĭcies, exitium.
deter, deterrĕre.
determine, judicĕre.
Dictator, Dictĕtor.
die, mŏri, mortuus sum (dep.).
difference, it makes a (300).
difficult, difficĭlis.
dig, fŏdĕre.
diligence, diligĕntia. *Diligently*, diligĕnter.
discern, cernĕre.
discharge, fungi (abl.).
discourse, sermo.
disease, morbus.
diseased, æger.

- disgrace*, dedēcus.
disgraceful, turpis, foedus.
displease, displicēre (dat.).
disregard, negligēre.
distinguish, cernēre.
distrust, diffidēre (dat.).
divide, dividēre.
ditch, fossa.
do, agēre, facēre (S.).
do-good-to, prodesse (prosum, dat., 241).
doctor, mēdicus.
dog, canis.
done, to be, fieri (App. XX).
doors, out of, foras (217), foris (261).
doors, fores (pl.).
doubt, dubitāre.
dove, columba.
down from, de (abl.).
drain, haurire.
draw out, elicēre.
dread, pavor.
dream, somnium.
dream, to, somniāre.
dress, vestis.
drink, bibēre.
drive, āgēre, pellēre (*banish*).
drop, (=let fall), dejicēre.
duck, ānas.
during, often *inter* with gerund (122).
duty, it is the — of (225).
dwell, dwell in, habitāre, incōlēre.
each (of several), quisque. *Each* (of two), uterque.
each other (after 'contrary to'), inter se.
eager, cupidus (gen.).
eagle, āquīla.
ear, auris.
earth, terra.
easily, facilē (facilius, facillime).
easy, facilis.
eat, ēdēre or esse (ēdo). App. XX.
edict, publish an, ēdicēre.
educate, ērūdīre.
egg, ōvum.
Egypt, Aegyptus.
- either* — or, vel — vel; aut — aut; sive, seu (816).
embrace, amplexus.
embrace, to, amplecti (dep.).
eminent, summus.
employ, uti (abl.).
empire, imperium.
enact, constituēre.
end, finis.
endeavour, conāri (dep.).
endowed with, *endued with*, prae-ditus (abl.).
endure, sustinēre, pati (dep.).
enemy, hostis (often in pl.), inimicus (S.).
engaged in, to be, interesse (dat.).
enjoin, praecepere.
enjoy, frui (abl.); potiri (abl. or gen., 254).
enlarge, augēre.
enough, sātis (228).
enquire, quērere.
enter, ingrēdi (dep.).
entreat, ōrāre.
entrust, committēre.
envy, invidēre (dat.).
equal, par.
err, errāre.
escape, fuga. *Escape from evils* (232, 235).
escape, to, effūgēre, fūgēre, evādēre.
esteem, aestimāre, habēre.
even (=equal, level), par.
even, etiam, vel.
even, not even, nē — quidem (142).
evening, in the, vespēri.
events, at all —, certe.
ever, unquam.
every, omnis. *Everybody*, omnes (pl.).
everywhere, ubique.
evil, mālum. *Evils*, mālā (n. pl.).
example, exemplum.
excel, praeſtare.
excellent, excellens, praeſtans.
except, nisi (adv.); praeſter (prep.).
excessive, nimius.
exercise, uti (dep. abl.).
exhort, hortāri (dep.).

exile (= banishment), *exsilium*.
exile, an, exsul.
exist, esse.
expect, expectāre.
expediency, utilitas.
experience, usus.
extinguish, exstinguere.
eye, oculus.

fable, fabula.

fact, it is an allowed —, constat
 (161).

fail, desse.

fall, cādere.

fall-down, decidere.

false, falsus.

falsehood, mendācium. *Tell*

falsehoods, see lie.

fame, fama.

famous, cēlēber, nōbilis.

farmer, agricōla.

farthest, extrēmus.

fat, pinguis.

father, pater.

fatherland, patria.

fault, culpa.

favour, gratia.

favour, to, favere (dat.).

favourable, secundus.

fear, mētus, timor.

fear, to, metuere, timere, vereri
 (dep., S.).

feather, penna.

feed (trans.), pascere; (intrans.)
pasci. Feed-on, vesci (abl.).

feel, sentire.

feeling, sensus.

fell, to, cādere.

few, pauci.

field, ager.

field, in the, militiæ (261).

fiercely, acriter (acrius, acerrime).

fight, a, pugna.

fight, to, pugnare.

figure, forma.

fill, implere.

find, invēnire, reperire (S.).

find-fault-with, reprehendere
 (308).

finger, digītus.

finish, conficere.

fire, ignis. To be on fire, ardere,
flagrāre.

first, primus.

fish, piscis.

fisherman, piscator.

fit for, aptus, idoneus (with dat.
or ad), p. 47, note.

five, quinque.

five hundred, quingenti, &, a.

flee, fugere.

fleece, vellus.

fleet, a, classis.

flesh, caro, carnis, f.

flight, fuga. Also by verb-noun
infinitive (112).

flow, fluere. Flow-into, influere.

flower, flos.

flowery, of-flowers, floreus.

fly (as a bird), volare.

fly-away, avolare.

fly-back, refugere.

fly-from, fugere.

follow, sequi (dep.).

follow-up, perssequi (dep.).

folly, stultitia.

fond, studiosus (gen.), amans,
diligens.

food, cibus.

fool, a, stultus.

foolish, stultus, ineptus.

foot, pes.

for (conj.), nam, namque, enim.

for (= instead of), pro (prep.).

Often a sign of *dat.* (239).

Before a noun of *Time* it must
 be translated by the acc. (218).

When it expresses '*for how*
much,' by gen. or abl. (256).

for-a-long-time, diu.

for-the-sake, causā (with gen.).

forage, frumentari (dep.), pabulari
(dep.).

forbid, vetare.

force, vis.

forces, copiae, pl. (copia).

forest, silva.

forget, oblivisci (dep.) with gen.

forgetful, immemor.

forgive, ignoscere (dat.).

form, forma.

formar, prior, pristinus.

- formerly*, olim.
fortification, munitio.
fortify, munire.
fortune, fortuna.
forty, quadraginta (indecl.).
forward (adj.), petulana.
foul, foedus.
found, inventus, repertus.
found, to, condere.
fountain, fons, fontis, m.
four, quattuor. *Fourth*, quartus.
four-hundred, quadringenti, æ, a.
fox, vulpes.
fraud, fraus.
free, liber. *Freely*, libere.
free, to, liberare.
freedom, libertas.
free-from, solutus (abl.),
frequented, cëlëber.
fresh, recens.
friend, amicus. *Friendly*, amicus (adj.).
friendship, amicitia.
frighten, terrere, deterere.
Frightened, territus.
frog, rana.
from, a or ab. *Down from*, de.
Out of, e or ex. *Often by abl.*
alone (249).
from (after verbs of hindering,
 etc.), quominus (289).
fruits of the earth, fruges (S.).
full, plenus.
future, futurus. (See sum.)
gain, to, adipisci (dep.).
gain possession of, potiri (gen. or
 abl., 254).
game, ludus.
garden, hortus.
garland, corôna.
garment, vestis.
garrison, præsidium.
gate, porta.
Gaul, Gallia.
Gaul, a, Gallus.
gaze-at, spectare.
general, imperator.
generally, plerumque.
genius, ingënum.
gentle, humanus, mitis.
German, Germānus.
get-possession-of, potiri (gen. or
 abl. 254).
gift, donum (S.), munus.
girl, puella.
give, dare.
give-back, reddere.
give-up, tradere.
glad, lætus.
glass, of-glass, vitreus.
glory, gloria.
go, ire (eo).
go away, ab-ire (ab-eo).
go-down, descendere.
go-forth, prodire (eo), egrēdi (dep.).
go-out, exire, egrēdi (dep.).
goat, caper, m., hircus, m., ca-
 pella, f.
God, Deus (App. IX).
goddess, dea.
going-to —, participle in *urus*
 (147).
gold, aurum.
gold, golden, of gold, aurëus.
good, bonus.
good-for, utilis, with *dat.* or with
ad (p. 47).
good-fortune, felicitas.
goodness, bonitas.
good-will, benevolentia.
grant, concēdere.
great, magnus.
greater, major.
greatest, maximus. When *size* is
 not intended, summus.
greatest possible, quàm maximus.
greatness, magnitudo.
greedy, avidus (with gen.).
Greece, Græcia.
Greek, Græcus.
grief, dolor, luctus.
grieve, *grieve for*, dolere.
ground, humus. *On the ground*,
 humi (261).
grow, crescere.
guard, præsidium.
guard, to, custodire.

* Generally followed by e, ex, with Abl.

guard, to be on one's —, cavēre.
guide, dux. *Under my guidance*, me duce (abl. abs.).
guide, to, ducēre.

hair, capillus.
hand, mānus.
hand, to be at, adesse (adsum).
happen, accidēre.
happily, beāte.
happiness, felicitas.
happy, beātus, felix (S.).
harbour, portus, -ūs.
hard, durus.
hard-hearted, durus, ferrēus.
hardly, vix, egre. *Hardly any-body*, nemo fere.
harm, nocēre (dat., S.).
harsh, durus.
haste, cēlērītas.
haste, hasten, prōpērāre, festināre (311).
hate, odisse (L. P. § 74).
hateful, to be, odio esse (243).
hatred, odium.
have, habēre.
hawk, accipiter.
he, is, ille. But see 173.
head, cāput.
heal, medēri (dep. dat.).
health, salus, -ūtis.
healthy, salūber (104).
hear, audire.
heart, cor.
heat, calor.
heavily, grāviter.
heaviness, grāvitās.
heavy, grāvis.
he-goat, caper.
help, auxilium.
help, to, adjūvāre; succurrēre (dat.).
hen, gallina.
her (acc.), eam, illam.
her (possessive), 172, 173.
here, hic.
hereafter, olim.
herself, ipsa. But see 172, 173.
hesitate, dubitāre.
hide, a, pellis.
hide, to, tēgere.

hide-from, cēlāre (216).
high, altus.
highest, summus.
him, acc. of is, or ille.
himself, ipse. But see 172, 173.
hinder, impedire; obstāre (dat.).
his (173).
hither, huc.
hold, tenēre.
hold cheap, parvi aestimāre (226).
hold one's tongue, tacēre.
home, dōmus. *At home*, domi (261).
honour, honor.
honourable, honestus.
hook, hamus.
hope, spes.
hope, hope-for, spērāre.
horn, cornu.
horse, ēquus.
horseman, horse-soldier, ēques.
hostage, obses.
hot, calidus.
house, dōmus, p. 177; ædes (pl.).
how (before an adj.), quām.
however, tāmen, autem.
how great, quantus.
how many, quot.
how much, quantum (229).
huge, ingens.
human, humānus.
hunger, fāmes.
hungry, esuriens.
hunt, vērāri (dep.).
hunter, huntsman, vērātor.
hurt, lædēre (acc., S.).
husband, conjux.
husbandman, agrīcōla.
I, ego. App. XVI, A.
idle, ignāvus.
idleness, ignāvia.
if, si. *If any*, si quis (198).
ignorant, ignārus (gen.).
ignorant, to be, ignōrāre.
ill, to be, ægrōtāre.
ill-natured, difficilis.
illustrious, clarus.
imitate, imitāri (dep.).
immediately, statim.
immortal, immortālis.

impious, impius.
in, in (abl.) 77. See also 249.
in order to, *in order that*, ut (180-182): *before a comparative*, quo (277).
in order that—not, nē (180, 181); after, 'so,' 'such,' ut non (185).
in front of, ante (acc.).
in the field, militiæ (261).
inactive, iners.
increase (trans.), augere; (intrans.), crescere (311).
incredible, incredibilis.
indeed, quidem.
indulge, indulgere (dat.).
industrious, seditulus.
industry, industria.
inform, certiorē facere.
informed, to be, certior fieri.
inhabit, incolere.
inhabitant, incolā.
injure, nocere (dat., S.).
injury, injuria.
innocent, insons.
inscribe, inscribere.
instead of, in behalf of, pro (abl.).
intellect, mens.
intending-to —, part. in -urus (147).
intention, consilium.
intimacy, familiāritas.
into, in (acc.).
in vain, frustrā.
irks, it irks, piget (207).
iron, ferrum.
iron (adj.), of iron, iron-hearted, ferreus.
island, insula.
Italy, Italia.
its (173).
itself, ipse (174).
ivy, hēdēra.
jest, jocus. *Not even in jest*, nē joco quidem.
jest, to, jocari (dep.).
journey, iter.
joy, gaudium.
joyful, lætus.
judge, judex.
judge, to, judicāre.

judgment, judicium.
jump-upon, insilire, saltu se dare (with prep. in and acc.).
Jupiter, Jupiter, gen. Jovia. (App. IX).
just, justus.
justice, justitia.
justly, jure.
keen, ācer (104).
keep-back, retinere.
keep watches, vigiliās habere.
kid, hēdus.
kill, interficere, necare.
kindness, beneficium.
king, rex.
kingdom, regnum.
knife, culter.
know, scire, cognoscere, noscere.
knowledge, scientia.
know-not, not-know, nescire.
known, it is well —, constat (161).
labour, lābor.
Lacedæmonian, Lacedæmonius.
lame, claudus.
land, terra.
land, to (= put ashore), expōnere; (intrans.), e nāvi exire, or egrēdi (go ashore).
large, magnus. *Larger*, major.
last, ultimus.
last, at —, tandem.
Latin, Latinus.
laugh, laugh-at, ridere.
laughing-stock, ludibrium.
laughter, risus.
law, lex. *Propose a law*, lēgem ferre.
lay-down, ponere.
lazy, iners.
lead, ducere; (of a road) ferre.
leader, dux, princeps.
leaf, frons, folium.
lean-upon, niti (dep. abl.).
learn, discere.
learned, doctus.
least, minimus.
leave, relinquere.
leave-off, desinere.
left, relictus (part. relinquo).

leg, *crus*.
legion, *legio*.
length, *at*, *tandem*.
less, *minor*. *Less* (adv.), *minus*.
lest, *nē* (with subj., 180, 181).
let, sign of imperative (193).
letter (a written character), *litr̃a*.

A *letter*, *epistōla*; *litr̃a* (pl.).

liar, *mendax*.

liberality, *liberālitās*. *Liberally*, *liberālīter*.

lie, *a*, *mendācium*.

lie, *to*, *mentiri* (dep.).

lie, *lie down*, *jacere*.

lie-kid, *latere*.

lieutenant, *legātus*.

life, *vita*. *In the lifetime of* —, 342.

light, *lux*.

light (not heavy), *lēvis*.

light upon, *nancisci* (dep.).

like, *similis* (gen. or dat.), 102.

likeness, *imāgo*.

lily, *lilium*.

limit, *finis*.

line of battle, *acies*.

line of march, *agmen*.

lion, *leo*.

listen-to, *audire* (308).

literature, *litr̃a* (pl.).

little, *a little*, *pauca* (n. pl.).

live, *living*, *vivus*.

live (= dwell), *habitare*.

live, *to* (= be alive), *vivere*.

live-upon, *vesci* (abl.).

load, *ōnērare*.

lofty, *altus*.

long, *longus*.

long, *for a long time*, *diu* (diutius).

long, *to long for*, *cupere*.

look-around, *circumspicere*.

look-at, *adspicere* (aspicere), *spectare* (S.).

look-for, *quarere* (308).

loose, *solvere*.

lose, *amittere*, *perdere* (S.).

love, *amor*.

love, *to*, *amare*, *diligere*.

lover, *amans*.

loving, *amans*, *diligens*. (*With* gen., 233).

lucky, *felix*.

lying, *mendax*.

mad, *demens*.

made, *to be*, *fieri* (App. XX).

maintain (= rear) *alere*; (= keep up), *tenere*.

make (a king, consul), *creare*.

make, *facere*.

man, *homo*, *vir* (S.).

manifest, *manifestus*.

manner, *in such a*, *itā*.

manner, *mōdus*.

manners, *mōres* (mos).

many, *multi*.

march, *iter*.

march, *to*, *proficisci* (dep.), *contendere*.

margin, *margo*.

mark, *it is the* — of, 225.

marry (of men), *ducere*; (of women) *nubere* (dat.).

marsh, *pālus*, *ūdis*, *f*.

master (= owner), *dōminus* (S.).

master, *magister* (S.).

matter, *res*.

matters, *it* —, 300.

may, *licet* (281).

meadow, *prātum*.

mean, *sordidus*.

means, *a*, *mōdus*. *By no means*, *nullo modo*.

medicine, *medicīna*.

meet, *occurrere* (dat.).

melt, *liqueſcere*.

men of Athens, *Athenienses*.

messenger, *nuntius*.

method, *ratio*.

mid, *middle*, *midmost*, *midst*, *medius* (211).

might, *with all one's*, *summā ōpē*.

mild, *mitis*.

milk, *lac*.

mind, *animus*; *mens* (*the intellect*).

mine, *meus*.

misbehave, *it* —, *dedecet*.

miser, *a*, *avarus*.

misfortunes, *mālā* (n. pl.).

missing, *to be*, *desse* (desum).

mistress, *magistra*.

money, a sum of money, pecunia.

Money (= coin), nummus.

month, mensis.

more highly, pluris (226).

more (in quantity), plus.

more (in a higher degree), māgis.

mortal, mortālis.

most men, plerique (S.).

mother, māter.

motive, causa.

mountain, mons.

mournful, mæstus.

mouse, mus.

move (trans.), movēre; (intrans.)

movēri, or se movēre (311).

much, multus.

multitude, multitudo.

Muse, Musa.

must, 129-135, 245, 281.

my, meus.

name, nōmen.

natural-to-man, humānus.

nature, natūra.

nay rather, imino.

near, prope, ad.

nearer, propior.

nearest, proximū.

nearly, fere.

neck, cervix, collum.

need, indigēre (gen. or abl.).

needle, ācus.

neglect, negligēre.

negligent, negligens. *Negligent*

about, negligens (gen.).

neighbouring, vicinus.

neither — *nor*, nec — nec, neque

— neque.

neither (of two), neuter (105).

nest, nidus.

net, rēte.

never, nunquam.

nevertheless, tāmen, attāmen

(344).

new, nōvus.

next, proximū.

night, nox.

no, nullus.

noble, nōbilis.

nobody, *no one*, nemo (170).

noise, clamor.

none, nullus.

nor, nec, neque. (See also 180, 194).

not, non.

not even, nē — quidem (142).

nothing, nihil; nil (only in poetry).

not yet, nondum.

nourish, alēre.

now, nunc.

nowhere, nusquam.

O, O! Also a sign of Vocative alone.

oak, quercus.

obey, pārēre, obtempērāre, obēdire (dat.).

object of hatred, to be, odio esse (243).

object, to, recusāre (followed by quin).

obscure, obscurus.

obtain, adipisci (dep.).

occupy, tenēre.

odd, impar.

odour, odor.

of (= concerning), dē (abl.).

of, sign of Genitive. (See also 209, 349, 351.)

of what sort, quālis.

offer (trans.), offerre; (intrans.) offerri (311).

office, munus.

often, sæpe.

old, antiquus, vētus.

old-age, senectus.

old-man, sēnex. *Gen. pl.*, senum.

on (of place), in (abl.). *Of time*, abl. only (255).

on the ground, humi (261).

on-account-of, propter, ob (acc.).

on behalf of, pro.

once (= formerly), olim.

once, once for all, sēmel.

one, unus.

one (= a certain one), quīdam.

one (of two) alter.

one another, inter se; alius — alium.

one day, quondam.

one's, one's own, suus (173).

only, *mōdo, solum, tantum.*
open, *apertus, patefactus.*
open, to, *aperire.*
open, to be; lie open, *pātēre.*
opinion, *sententia, opinio.*
opportunity, *occasio.*
oppose, resistēre (dat.), *obstāre* (dat.).
opposite, *contrarius.*
or, aut, vel (316).
orator, *ōrātor.*
order, *ordo.*
order, to, *jubēre* (S.).
original, *pristinus.*
other, *alius, alter* (App. XI, A.).
otherwise, *aliter.*
ought, *oportet* (281).
our, ours, noster.
ourselves, *nos ipsi, nos-met ipsi.*
out of doors, *foras* (217), *foris* (261).
out-of, e, ex.
outside, *extra.*
over, *super, supra.*
overcome, *superāre.*
overwhelm, *obruere.*
owe, debere.
owing-to, *prae* (abl.).
own, his, her, its, suus (173).
own (= confess), *fatēri.*
owner, *dominus.*
pain, *dolor.* *Suffer pain*, *dolere.*
pains, ōpera, æ.
paint, *pingere.*
painter, *pictor.*
painting, *pictura.*
palace, *regia.*
pardon, *venia.*
pardon, *ignoscere* (dat.).
parent, *pārens.*
part, *pars.*
pass, pass-by, *præterire.*
pass-over, *transire* (eo).
past, the, *præterita* (n. pl.).
patron, *patrōnus.*
peace, pax. *To procure or establish peace*, *conciliare pacem.*
peacock, *pāvo.*
penetrate, *penetrare.*
people, *pōpulus.*

perceive, *sentire.*
perform, *fungi* (abl.); *efficere.*
perish, *perire* (eo).
permit, *sinere.*
permitted, it is, *licet* (281).
perpetual, *perpetua.*
persuade, *persuadere* (dat.).
pert, *pētulans.*
Phaethon, *Phaethon, ontis.*
philosopher, *philosophus.*
philosophy, *philosophia.*
physician, *mēdicus.*
pick-up, *legere.*
picture, *tābula, tabella.*
piercing, *acutus.*
pity, to, *misereri* (dep.) *with gen.*
I pity, *miseret me* (234).
place, a, locus.
place, to, *ponere.*
place-under, *supponere* (240).
plain, *manifestus.*
plain, a, campus.
plan, *consilium.*
play, *ludus.*
play, to, *ludere.*
pleasant, *gratus, jucundus.*
please, *placere* (dat.).
pleasing, *gratus.*
pleasure, *voluptas.*
plenty, *copia.*
plough, arare.
poet, *pōeta.*
point-of-a-spear, *cuspis.*
point-out, *monstrare.*
poor, pauper.
portrait, *imāgo.*
possess, *possidere.*
powerful, *pōtens.*
practise, *colere.*
praetor, *prætor.*
praise, laus.
praise, to, *laudare.*
pray, precari (dep.).
precept, *præceptum.*
prepare, *parare.*
prescribe, *præcipere.*
present, to be, adesse. *To be — at*, *interesse* (dat.).
present, a, donum (S.).
prevent, *inhibere.*
price, *pretium.*

price, at a great, magni (226).
primest, see *best*.
probable, verisimilis.
produce, pārere.
profitable, utilis.
promise, pollicēri (dep.), promittēre.
prosperous, secundus.
protect, munire.
protection, præsidium.
proud, superbus.
providence, prōvidentia.
punish, punire.
punishment, poena.
pupil, discipulus.
pursue, persēqui (dep.).
pursuit, a, studium.
put, ponere.
put-to-flight, fugāre.
put-on, induere.

queen, regina.
question, interrōgāre.
quickly, cēlērīter.
quiet, quīētus.
quite, omnino.
quoth (he), inquit (App. XIX).

random, at, tēmērē.
rank, ordo.
rapid, rāpidus.
rashly, tēmērē.
rashness, tēmērītas.
rather, I had, mālō, malle (App. XX).
reach, contingere. *Reach* (= come up with), pervenire (with ad).
read, lēgere.
ready, parātus (part. paro).
rear, alere.
reason (= cause), causa.
reason (the faculty of reasoning), ratio.
recall, revocāre.
receive, accipere, capere (App. XXI).
reckon, habere.
recollect, recordāri (dep.).
red, ruber.
reed, arundo.

reflect (= consider), cōgītāre.
reflect (= give back a reflection), reddere.
refuse, recūsāre (followed by quin).
regardless, negligens.
rein, frēnum.
reinforcements, subsidia (n. pl.).
rejoice, gaudere (156).
relate, narrāre.
release, solvere.
relying-on, frētus (abl.).
remain, manere.
remaining, reliquus.
remedy, remedium.
remember, meminisse (196, 233), recordāri (dep.), reminisci (dep.).
remove, removēre.
repents, it, pœnitet (234).
reply, respondere.
report, nuntiāre.
republic, res-publica (App. IX).
reputation, fama.
require, indigere (S.), with gen. or abl.
resentment, dolor.
reside, habitare.
resist, resistere (dat.).
resources, opes (pl.).
rest, quiescere.
rest, the, cæteri (pl.), reliquus.
restore (= give back), reddere.
restrain, cohibere.
retain, retinere, tenere.
return, a, reditus.
return (= go or come back), redire (-eo).
return (= give back), reddere.
revile, male-dicere (dat.).
reward, munus (S.).
Rhine, Rhēnus.
Rhone, Rhodānus.
rich, dives.
riches, divitiæ, opes.
rightly, recte.
rise, oriri (dep.).
river, amnis, fluvius, flumen (S.).
road, via.
rob, spoliare (233).
robber, latro.
robe, vestis.

rock, rupes, saxum.
rogue, veterātor.
roll (trans.), volvere, (intrans.)
 volvi, or volvere se (311).
Rome, Roma. *Of-Rome*, Romānus.
roof, tectum.
root, radix.
rose, rosa.
rough, asper.
round, circum.
royal, rēgius.
ruin, perdere.
rule, rēgere.
run, currere.
run-away, fugere, aufūgere.
running, cursus.
rush, ruere.

sad, tristis, mæstus.
safe, incōlūmis, tutus.
safety, sālus, -ūtis.
Saguntum, Saguntum.
said (he), inquit.
sail, nāvigāre.
sake, for the sake of, causā (with
 gen.).
salute, salutāre.
same, the, idem (174).
sand, arena.
satiare, satīsfy, satiāre.
say, dicere. 'He says,' 'says he,'
 ait, inquit.
say — not, negāre.
scarcely, vix.
scatter, spargere.
sea, mare.
see, cernere, videre, spectare, as-
 picere (S.).
seek, seek-for, quærere, pētere (S.).
seem, vidēri (pass. of video).
-self, ipse (174).
sell, vendere.
senate, senātus.
send, mittere.
send-forward, præmittere.
sepulchre, sepulcrum.
serve, servire (dat.).
serviceable, utilis (with ad, or with
 dat.).
set-free, liberāre.
set-out, proficisci (dep.).

settler, colōnus.
several, complures.
severe, sevērus, grāvis.
shade, shadow, umbra.
shake-off, decūtēre.
shall, sign of future. See note,
 p. 15.
shames, it shames, pūdet (207).
shameful, fœdus, turpis.
sharp, acūtus.
sharpen, acuere.
shave, tondere.
sheep, ōvis.
she-goat, capella.
shepherd, pastor.
shine, nitere.
ship, nāvis.
short, brevīs.
shortly, breviter.
shortness, brevitas.
should (129-135; 162).
shout, shouting, a, clāmor.
shout, to, clāmāre.
show, monstrare.
shrill, acūtus.
shudder, shudder at, horrere.
shun, vitare.
shut, to, claudere.
shut (part.), clausus.
sick, æger.
silence, silentium.
silent, to be, silere, tacere. To be
 — about, tacere (with acc.).
silly, ineptus.
silver, — plate, argentum.
sin, peccare.
since, cum or quum (with subj.).
sing, cantare, canere.
singing, cantus.
sister, sōror.
sit, sedere.
six-hundred, sexcenti, æ, a.
size, magnitudo.
skilful, peritus, sollers.
skilled-in, peritus (gen.).
skin, pellis.
slave, servus. To be a — to, ser-
 vire (dat.).
slay, cedere, occidere.
sleep, somnus.
sleep, to, dormire.

- slender*, grācilis.
small, parvus; *smaller*, mīnor; *smallest*, minimus.
smell, odor.
smile, risus.
smile, *smile at*, ridēre.
smile (with disease, etc.), afficere.
snares, laqueus.
snow, nix.
so, ita, adeo, tam, sic. *So very*, adeo.
so great, tantus.
so many, tot.
so much, tantum (228). *By so much*, tanto (275).
so that (185).
Socrates, Socrātes.
soft, mollis.
sold, to be, vēnīre (250).
soldier, miles.
some, *some one*, aliquis, quispiam.
some — others, alii — alii.
sometimes, interdum, aliquando.
somewhat, paulo (275).
son, filius.
son-in-law, gēner.
song, cantus.
soon, mox.
sorrow, luctus.
soul, ānīmus.
sound, sōnus.
sound (adj.), sānus.
sovereignty, regnum.
Spain, Hispānia.
spare, parcere.
sparing, parcus.
speak, loqui (dep.).
spear-point, cuspis.
speech, a, oratio.
speed, celeritas, cursus.
spiteful, maledicus.
sport, ludus.
spring (the season), ver.
spring, to, oriri (dep.).
spur, calcar.
staff, fustis.
stag, cervus.
stand, stare.
star, sidus.
start, proficisci (dep.).
- starvation*, fāmes.
state, civitas; res-publica (App. IX).
stay, commorari (dep.).
still, to be, silere (S.).
stir, see move.
stern, severus.
stone, lapis, saxum.
stop, desino (311).
storm, tempestas, procella.
story, fabula.
stranger, hospes, itia.
stream, flumen, rivus (S.).
street, vicus.
strength, vires (vis, App. IX).
strive, niti (dep.).
style, elegantia.
successful, felix.
succour, succurrere (dat.).
such, of such a kind, talia.
such (of size), tantus.
such (with an adj.), tam.
sudden, subito.
suddenly, subito, repente.
sue-for, petere (308).
suffer (= permit), sinere.
suffer, pati (dep.).
suffer-pain, dolere.
suffice, to be sufficient, sufficere.
sufficient, satis (229).
suitable, suited, idoneus (dat.), p. 47, note.
summer, aestas.
summer (adj.), of summer, aestivus.
sun, sol.
sup, cenare.
supper, cena.
suppose, putare.
surprise, opprimere.
surround, cingere; circumvenire (hem in).
survive, superesse.
sustain, sustinere.
swallow, hirundo.
swift, celer (104), velox. *Swiftly*, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritas.
swim, nare, natare.
sword, ensis.
Syracuse, Syracusae (pl.).

table, mensa.
tail, cauda.
take, capere.
take-care, cavere.
take-place, fieri (App. XX).
tale, fabula.
talent (= a sum of money), talentum.
talent (= ability), ingenium.
talk with, collōqui (with prep. cum).
talkative, lōquax.
taste, gustare.
taught, doctus (doceo).
teach, docere.
tear, lacrima.
tear, to, lacerare.
tell, narrare.
tell-a-lie, mentiri (dep.).
temple, templum; ædes (sing.).
ten, decem. *Ten* (apiece), dēni, æ, a. *Tenth*, decimus.
tender, tener, era, erum.
territory, fines, pl. (finis).
than, 270, 271.
thanks, to return, agere gratias.
that (demonst. pron.), is, ille, iste (126).
that (= which), qui, quæ, quod. See also 322.
that (= in order that), ut (180).
that, after 'so,' 'such,' ut (185).
that not, nē (180), ut non (185).
that (with comparatives), quo (277).
that, sign of acc. and infin. (160-162).
that (after verbs of doubting, denying), quin (288).
that-of-yours, iste (126).
the — *the*, quanto — tanto, quo — eo (276).
their, *their own*, suus (if it relates to Subject of sentence. *If not*, eorum, illorum, 173). [Often omitted unless emphatic., p. 26, note.]

themselves, ipsi, se (172-174).
then, tum.
thence, inde.
there-is, est. *There-are*, sunt.
there, ibi. *There* (= yonder), illic.
therefore, igitur.
they, ii, illi. Often omitted (48). See also 172, 173.
thick, densus.
thief, fur.
thing, res. Often omitted (75, 76).
think, existimare, putare, cogitare, sentire (S.).
think-little-of, parvi aestimare (226).
third, tertius.
thirst, thirst for, sitire (308).
thirsty, sitiens.
this, hic, hæc, hoc (126).
thither, eo.
thou, tu.
though, licet, quamvis, cum (quum), (302).
thousand, a, mille (indecl.). (App. XV.)
threaten, minari (dep.).
three, tres (App. XV).
threshold, limen.
thrifty, parcus.
through, per (prep.).
throw, jacere, precipitare, immittere.
throw away, abjicere, -jēci.
throw-down, dejicere, -jēci.
thus, ita, sic.
thy, tuus.
time, tempus. *At the same time*, simul.
time (of life), ætas.
timid, timidus.
tired, fessus.
to, ad. (Also sign of dat.* and of infin.).
to (= in order to), 180-182.
to-day, hodie.
together, simul.

* 'To,' as a sign of Dative, is omitted after *give*, *send*, *write*. See also 113.

tomb, sepulcrum.
to-morrow, cras.
tongue, to hold one's, tacēre.
too great, too much (adj.), nimius.
 (Adv.) nimis, nimium (229).
too late, sērus.
too little, pārūm (229).
too — to (Diff. of Idiom, p. 168).
tooth, dēns.
top-of, summus (211).
touch, tangēre.
tower, turris.
town, oppidūm.
towns-people, oppidāni.
trace, track, vestigium.
trace, track, to, indāgāre, investi-
 gāre.
tragedy, tragœdia.
train, instituere.
travel, iter facere.
traveller, viātor.
tree, arbor.
trench, fossa.
Troy, Troja.
true, vērū.
truly, vērō.
trust, crēdere (dat.).
truth, vēritas.
tumble-down, ruere.
turn (trans.), convertēre. (In-
 trans.), converti (311).
twelve, duodēcim.
twenty, viginti (indecl.).
two, duo (App. XV).
two-hundred, ducenti, æ, a.
tyrant, tyrannus.

unable, to be, non posse.
unaware, inscius.
unbecoming, it is, dēdēcet (204).
uncertain, incertus.
unconscious, to be, nescire.
under, sub (77), subter.
understand, intelligere.
undertake, suscipere.
uneven, impar.
unfortunate, adversus.
unfriendly, inimicus.
unhappy, infelix.
unhurt, incōlūmis.
universe, mundus.

unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis.
unlucky, infelix.
unmindful, immemor.
unprofitable, { inūtilis.
unserviceable, {
unskilled, unskilful, unskilful in,
 imperitus (gen.).
unwilling, invitus.
unwilling, to be, nolle (App. XX).
unworthy, indignus (abl.).
upon, in (abl.), super.
urge, urge-on, urgere.
use, usus.
use, to, uti (dep.).
useful, utilis.
useless, inūtilis.
usually, plerumque.

vainly, in vain, frustrā.
valour, virtus.
value, to, aestimare.
variety, dissimilitudo.
venture, audere (156).
verse, carmen, versus.
very, sign of Superl.
very highly, maximi (226).
very many, plurimū.
vice, vitium.
victor, victor.
victory, victōria.
view, to, conspicere.
vigorously, ācriter.
violence, vis.
virgin, virgo.
virtue, virtus, ūtis.
voice, vox.

wage, gērere.
wait, wait-for, expectare.
walk, ambulare.
wall, murus.
wander, vagari (dep.).
want, inopia.
want (= be without), carere (abl.).
 = need, indigere (gen. or abl.).
wanting, to be, deesse.
war, bellum.
warm, cālidus.
warmth, cālor.
warn, monere (181, 184).

watch, vigilia.
watch, to be on the —, cavēre.
water, aqua.
water, to, irrigāre.
wave, fluctus.
way, via.
we, nos.
weak, imbecillus, infirmus.
wealth, ōpes (pl.).
wealthy, opulentus.
weapon, telum.
wear, gerere, uti (abl.).
wear-out, detēre.
weary, fessus. *I am weary of*, 234.
weather, tempestas.
wed (of a man), ducere; (of a woman), nubere (dat.).
weep, weep for, flere.
weight, pondus.
welfare, salus, ūtis.
well, a, puteus.
well (adv.), bene.
well-known, it is —, constat (161).
what (interrog.), quis, qui? (187).
what (= that which), qui (166).
what (before adjectives), quā (p. 75, note).
what sort of, quālis.
when, quum or cum. (Interrog.), quando?
whence, unde.
where, ubi, quā. (Interrog.), ubi?
whereas, quum or cum (with subj.).
wherefore, quāre.
whether, -ne, num, utrum, sive (296, 299; 317).
which, qui.
which (of two), uter.
while, whilst, dum.
while (whilst) *playing*, inter ludendum (122).
white, albus.
whither, quo.
who, qui. (Interrog.), quis, qui? (187).
whoever, whosoever, quicunque, quisquis.
whole, whole of, the whole, totus.
wholesome, salūber.

why, cur, quāre, quid.
wide, lātus.
wife, conjux, uxor.
will, willing, to be, velle (volo).
willingly, libenter.
wind, ventus.
wing, penna.
winter, hiems.
winter (adj.), of winter, hibernus.
Winter quarters, hiberna (n. pl.).
winter, to, hibernāre.
wisdom, sapientia.
wise, sapiens.
wise, to be, sapiere.
wish, velle (App. XX).
wish-not, not-wish, nolle (App. XX).
wish rather, malle (App. XX).
with (= together with), cum (abl.).
 Also sign of abl. (36, 37).
with difficulty, ægre, vix (249, note).
with speed, celeriter (249).
without (= outside), extrā; (= not having), sine (abl.).
without, followed by verbal subst. in -ing, is translated by 'quin' (288), never by sine and the Gerund or Gerundive (112, note).
without, do, be without, carere (abl.).
without my knowledge, me inscio (342).
wolf, lupus.
woman, fēmina, mulier.
wonder, wonder at, mirari (dep.).
wonderful, mirābilis, mirus.
wont, to be, solere (156).
wood, a, silva.
wooden, of wood, ligneus.
wool, lāna.
word, a, verbum.
word, to bring, nuntiāre.
work, opus.
world, mundus.
worn-out, detritus (detēro).
worse, pejor.
worship, colere.
worst, pessimus.

worthy, dignus (abl.).
would rather, see wish-rather.
would that! (302).
wound, a, vulnus.
wound, to, vulnerāre.
wretched, miser.
write, scribere.
wrong, a, injuria.

Xenophon, Xenōphon, -ontis.

yacht, phasellus.
ye, vos (App. XVI).
year, annus.

yellow, flavus.
yesterday, heri.
yet, tamen, attamen, verumtamen
 (344).
yon, yonder, ille (126).
you (sing.), tu; (pl.) vos.
young, juvenis (junior).
young man, adolescens.
your, yours, tuus (sing.), vester
 (pl. App. XVI, C.).
yourself, tu ipse, ipse (174).
youth, a, adolescens, juvenis.
youth (time of), juvenus,
 ūtis.

VOCABULARY II.

Latin-English.

a, ab, abs, <i>by, from.</i>	ad-moneo, ēre, <i>remind.</i>
ab-eo, ire (141), <i>depart, go away.</i>	adolescens, <i>a young man.</i>
ab-sens (absum), <i>absent.</i>	adolescentulus, <i>a youth, strip-</i>
ab-solvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, <i>acquit.</i>	<i>ling.</i>
ab-sum, esse, fui (S.), <i>am absent, away.</i>	ad-sum, esse, fui, <i>am present, at hand.</i>
ac, <i>and</i> (never before a vowel).	adulter, <i>adulterer.</i>
ac-cēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, <i>ap-</i>	ad-ūro, ēre, ussi, ustum, <i>singe.</i>
<i>proach, am added.</i>	ad-ventus, ūs, <i>arrival, coming.</i>
ac-cīdo, ēre, cīdi, <i>happen.</i>	ad-versus (adj.), <i>adverse, unfor-</i>
accipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, <i>re-</i>	<i>tunate.</i>
<i>ceive.</i>	ad-versus (prep.), <i>against, to-</i>
accipiter, tris, <i>a hawk.</i>	<i>wards.</i>
acer, cris, cre, <i>active, keen.</i>	aenēus, <i>of brass, brazen.</i>
acerbus, <i>bitter, sour, crabbed.</i>	aedes, in sing. <i>a temple, in pl.</i>
acies, ēi, <i>line of battle, battle-</i>	<i>a house.</i>
<i>array, edge.</i>	ædifico, āre, <i>build.</i>
acervus, i, <i>heap.</i>	æger, <i>sick, diseased.</i>
ācritē, <i>fiercely, vigorously</i> (ac-	ægrē, <i>with difficulty, scarcely.</i>
<i>rius, acerrime).</i>	Ægre ferre, <i>to take amiss, fret</i>
acuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, <i>sharpen.</i>	<i>at, be indignant at.</i>
acus, ūs, <i>needle.</i>	ægrōto, āre, <i>am ill.</i>
acūtus, <i>sharp, shrill, piercing.</i>	Ægyptus, i, f., <i>Egypt.</i>
ad, <i>to, at, by, near,</i> (with a Gerund	æqualis, <i>equal (in age), of the</i>
<i>or Gerundive, 'for').</i>	<i>same age.</i>
ad-duco, ēre, duxi, ductum, <i>bring or lead up.</i>	æquitas, <i>equity, justice, impar-</i>
adeo, so, <i>so very.</i>	<i>tiality.</i>
ad-eo, ire (141), <i>approach, go to.</i>	æstas, tatis, <i>summer.</i>
ad-hinnio, ire, <i>neigh after, neigh</i>	æstimo, āre, <i>estimate, value.</i>
<i>to.</i>	æstivus, <i>of or belonging to sum-</i>
ad-imo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, <i>take</i>	<i>mer, summer.</i>
<i>away.</i>	ætās, ātis, <i>age, time (of life).</i>
ad-ipiscor, adeptus sum, <i>gain,</i>	affecto, āre, <i>aim at.</i>
<i>obtain.</i>	afficio, ēre, feci, fectum, <i>visit,</i>
ad-jūvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, <i>help,</i>	<i>smile.</i>
<i>aid.</i>	affirmo, āre, <i>assert.</i>
ad-ministro, āre, <i>administer,</i>	agellus, i, <i>small field, farm.</i>
<i>manage.</i>	ager, agri, <i>field.</i>
admīror, āri, <i>admire.</i>	aggredior, aggressus sum, <i>ag-</i>
	<i>grēdi, approach, attack.</i>
	agmen, inis, <i>line of march.</i>

agnosco, ěre, agnōvi, agnītum, *recognise.*

āgo, ěre, āgi, actum, *act, do, effect.* Agĕre gratias, *return thanks.*

agricōla, æ, m., *a farmer.*

aio, *say, assert* (App. XIX).

ālācer (104), *alert, brisk.*

albus, *white.*

aliĕnus, *of or belonging to another, another man's.*

aliquis, *some, some one, any* (App. XVII).

alius (S.), *other, another, alii — alii, some — others* (App. XI).

alo, ěre, ui, *nourish, maintain.*

alter (S.), *the one or the other (of two)* (App. XI).

altus, *deep, high, lofty.*

amābilis, *loveable.*

amans (amo), *loving, a lover.*

Also adj., *enamoured of, with gen.*

ambitio, *ambition.*

ambūlo, āre, *walk.*

amīcitia, *friendship.*

amicus, *friendly.* Also subst., *a friend.*

āmitto (S.), ěre, mīsi, missum, *lose.*

amnis (S.), *a river.*

amo, āre, *love.*

amor, ōris, *love.*

an, *whether, or.* Sometimes interrogative.

ānas, ātis, *duck.*

angūlus, i, *corner.*

animal, ālis, *an animal.*

animus, i, *mind, soul.*

annūlus, a ring.

annus, *year.*

anser, ěris, *a goose.*

ante, *before, in front of.*

antea, *before, formerly.*

ante-fero, ferre, tuli, *prefer.*

antiquus, *ancient, old.*

aperio, ěre, ui, apertum, *open.*

āpis, *a bee.*

apium, *parsley.*

appāreo, ěre, pāruī, *appear.*

appello, āre, *call.*

appetitus, *appetite, pl. passions, desires.*

aptus, *fit, suitable.*

apud, *at, amongst* (App. XXIII).

āqua, *water.*

aquīla, *an eagle.*

Arar, āris, *the river Saône.*

arbītror, āri, *think.*

arbor (arbos), ōris, *f., tree.*

Ardĕa, *a town of Latium.*

arĕna, *sand, beach.*

argentum, *silver, plate.*

āro, āre, *plough.*

ars, tis, *art, accomplishment.*

Artemisia, *wife of Mausōlus, king of Caria.*

arundo, ĩnis, *reed.*

arx, arcis, *citadel, height.*

asper, aspĕra, aspĕrum, *cruel, rough, dangerous.*

aspicio, ěre, spĕxi, spectum (S.), *look at, behold.*

assimūlo, āre, *pretend.*

astrum (S.), *a constellation.*

at, *but, nay but.*

Athĕnæ (pl.), *Athens.*

Atheniensis, *Athenian.*

Attālus, *a king of Pergāmus in Asia Minor.*

attāmen, *yet, but yet, nevertheless* (344).

attingo, ěre, attĭgi, *touch lightly, take up.*

atque (S.), *and.*

auctio, *sale, auction.*

auctor, ōris, *author.*

auctōritas, *personal weight, influence, authority.*

audax, *bold, daring.*

audeo, ěre, ausus sum, *dare, venture* (156).

audio, ěre, īvi, itum, *hear, listen to.*

augeo, ěre, xi, ctum, *enlarge, increase* (311); *improve.*

aura, *breeze, air.*

aurĕus, *of gold, golden, gold.*

auris, *ear.*

aurum, *gold.*

aut, or. Aut — aut, *either — or.*

autem, *but, however* (344).
 auxilium, *aid, assistance*.
 avārus, *avaricious. A miser*.
 avidus, *greedy, craving for*.
 avis, *a bird*.

barba, *beard*.
 barbātus, *bearded*.
 beātē (adv.), *happily*.
 beātus (S.), *happy*.
 • Belgæ, pl. m., *a people of ancient Gaul*.
 bellum, *war*.
 bēnē, *well*.
 beneficium, *benefit, kindness*.
 bībo, ēre, bībi, bibītum, *drink*.
 bōnitas, *goodness, bounty*.
 bōnum, i, *a good thing, blessing*.
 bōnus, *good*.
 brēvis, *short*.
 brēvitas, *shortness*.
 brēviter, *shortly, briefly*.
 Britannia, *Britain*.

cæcus, *blind*.
 cædo, ēre, cecidi, cæsum, *cut, fell, slay*.
 cætēri, pl., *the rest*.
 calcar, ārīs, *spur*.
 cālīdus, *hot*.
 calor, *heat, warmth*.
 Camillus, *a noble Roman*.
 campus, *a plain*.
 candens, *part. of candeo*.
 candeo, ēre, *am at white heat, am hot, glow*.
 cānis, *is, a dog*.
 cāno, ēre, cēcīni, cantum, *sing*.
 canto, āre, *sing*.
 cantus, *song, singing*.
 capella, *she-goat*.
 cāper, pri, *he-goat*.
 capillus, i, *hair*.
 capio, ēre, cēpi, captum, *take, receive*.
 cāput, cāpītis, *head*.
 careo, ēre (S.), *am without, want, do without*.
 Caria, *a province of Asia Minor*.
 carmen, īnis, n., *a song, verse*.
 caro, carnis, *flesh*.

Carthaginiensis, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgo, gīnis, *Carthage*.
 cārus, *dear*.
 casēus, *cheese*.
 castra, pl. n., *a camp*.
 cāsu, *by accident*.
 cāsus, *accident, chance*.
 catēna, *chain*.
 cauda, *tail*.
 causa, *cause, reason, motive*.
 causā, *for the sake, with gen.*
 cautus, *cautious*.
 cāveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, *be on the watch, be on one's guard, beware*.
 cēlēber, brīs, bre, *frequented, famous*.
 cēler, cēlēris, cēlēre, *swift* (104).
 cēlēritas, tātis, *swiftness, speed, haste*.
 cēlēriter, *swiftly, quickly, with speed*.
 cēlo, āre, *hide, hide or conceal from* (216).
 cēna, *supper*.
 cēpi, *see capio*.
 Cēres, Cērēris, *the goddess of corn*.
 cerno, ēre, crēvi (S.), *see clearly, discern, distinguish*.
 certe, *certainly, at all events*.
 certior fio, *I am informed; certio-riorem facere, to inform*.
 cervix, vicis, *neck*.
 cervus, *a stag*.
 Ciccero, ōnis, *a famous Roman orator*.
 Cilicia, *a province of Asia Minor*.
 Cimbri, pl. m., *a people of Germany*.
 cingo, ēre, cinxi, cinctum, *surround, encircle*.
 circiter (prep.), *about*.
 circum (prep.), *around* (acc.).
 circum-eo, ēre, *go round, visit*.
 circum-spicio, spicere, spexi, *spectum, look around*.
 circum-venio, ēre, vēni, ventum, *surround, hem in*.
 civis, *is, a citizen*.
 civitas, tatis, *a state*.
 clāmo, āre, *shout*.

- clāmor, ōris, *shout, shouting, noise.*
 clārus, *bright, illustrious.*
 classis, is, *a fleet.*
 claudio, ēre, clausi, clausum, *close, shut.*
 claudus, *lame.*
 cœpi, *begin (L. P. § 74).*
 cōgito, āre (S.), *think, reflect.*
 cognosco, ēre, cognōvi, cognītum, *know.*
 cogo, ēre, co-ēgi, coactum, *compel.*
 cohibeo, ēre, *restrain.*
 cohors, cohortis, *cohort, a division of a Roman legion.*
 collineo, āre, *hit the mark.*
 collōquor, lōqui, locūtus, *converse, talk with.*
 collum, *neck,*
 cōlo, ēre, colui, cultum, *cultivate, practise, worship.*
 colōnus, i, *a settler, colonist.*
 color, ōris, *colour.*
 columba, *a dove.*
 committo, ēre, misi, missum, *entrust,*
 commōdum, *an advantage. Commōdo esse, to be advantageous (243).*
 commōror, āri, *abide, stay, sojourn.*
 communis, *common.*
 compello, ēre, compūli, pulsus, *compel, drive.*
 complūres, ā and īa, pl., *a great many, several.*
 compōno, ēre, *compose.*
 comprehendo, ēre, prehendi, prehensum, *seize.*
 concēdo, ēre, cessi, cessum, *admit, grant.*
 concilio, āre, *procure, establish (peace).*
 condo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, *found, build.*
 conferre culpam, *lay the blame.*
 conficio, ēre, fēci, fectum, *complete, finish.*
 confido, ēre, *feel sure, confident.*
 confusus, a, um, *in disorder, disordered (confundo).*
 conjux, ūgis, m. f., *husband, wife.*
 cōnor, āri, *endeavour, attempt.*
 conscio, scīre, *be privy to, be conscious of.*
 consilium, *advice, design, plan.*
 consolatio, onis, *comfort, consolation.*
 conspectus, ūs, *sight, view.*
 conspicio, ēre, spexi, *view, behold.*
 constat, *it is an allowed fact, it is known, agreed.*
 constituo, ēre, stitui, stitūtum, *enact, settle.*
 consul, ūlis, *a consul.*
 consulātus, ūs, *consulship.*
 consūlo, ēre, sului, sultum, *consult; with dat., 'consult for a person's interests.'*
 contēgo, ēre, texi, tectum, *cover.*
 contemno, nēre, tempai, tempum, *despise.*
 contemplor, *look earnestly at.*
 contemptus, ūs, *contempt, scorn.*
 contendo, ēre, *contend, march, hasten.*
 contentus, *content, contented (abl.).*
 continens, entis, *the mainland (supply terra).*
 contingo, ēre, tīgi, *reach.*
 contrā (prep.), *against (acc.).*
 contrarius, *contrary.*
 converto, ēre, verti, *versum, turn.*
 convenio, ire, *assemble (intrans.); call upon (trans.).*
 convōco, āre, *call together, assemble.*
 copia, *abundance, plenty. In pl. forces.*
 copiosus, *plentiful, abundant.*
 cor, cordis, *heart.*
 Corinthus, *Corinth.*
 cornix, icis, *a crow.*
 cornu, ūs, n., *horn.*
 corōna, *a garland, chaplet.*
 corpus, ōris, *body.*
 cortex, icis, *bark (of trees).]*

cras, *to-morrow*.
 crādo, ěre, didi, dĭtum, *believe, trust*.
 crĕmo, āre, *burn*.
 creō, āre, *create, make* (a king, consul, etc.).
 cresco, ěre, crĕvi, *grow, increase* (intrans.).
 crĭnis, *a lock of hair, hair*.
 crudĕlis, *cruel*.
 crudĕlĭtas, tātis, *cruelty*.
 crus, crŭris, *leg*.
 cubĭle, *couch, bed*.
 culpa (S.), *fault*.
 culpo, āre, *blame*.
 culter, tri, *knife*.
 cum (prep.), *with*.
 cum (quum), *when, since, where-as*.
 cunctatio, onis, *delay*.
 cunctus, *all, the whole*.
 cupĭdĭtas, tatis, *desire*.
 cupidus, *desirous, eager*.
 cupio, ěre, cupĭvi, cupĭtum, *desire, long for*.
 cur, *why*.
 cura, *care, anxiety*.
 curro, ěre, cucurri, cursum, *run*.
 currus, ūs, *chariot*.
 cursus, *course, running, speed*.
 cuspis, idis, *spear-point*.
 custōdio, ire, *guard, watch*.
 Cynthia, *a woman's name*.
 Cyprus, *an island in the Mediterranean*.

dē (prep.), *down from, concerning, of, about* (abl.).
 dea, *a goddess*.
 debeo, ěre, bui, bitum, *I owe, I ought*.
 dē-cēdo, ěre, *depart*.
 dĕcem, *ten*.
 dē-cepō, ěre, cerpsi, cerptum, *pluck*.
 dĕcet, *it beseeems, becomes*.
 dē-cĭdo, ěre, cĭdi, *fall down*.
 declāro, āre, *declare*.
 dēdĕcet, *it misbeseeems, becomes not*.
 dēdĕcus, cōris, *disgrace*.

H. L. B. G.]

dĕfendo, ěre, fendi, fensum, *defend*.
 dē-fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *carry down*.
 dĕformo, āre, *disfigure, spoil the shape of*.
 dĕgo, ěre, *live*.
 deinde, *afterwards, then*.
 dĕjicio, ěre, jĕci, jectum, *let drop, throw down*.
 dĕlecto, āre, *delight*.
 dĕleo, ěre, ĕvi, ĕtum, *destroy*.
 dĕlinquo, ěre, liqui, lictum, *sin, transgress*.
 dĕmens, ntis, *mad*.
 Demosthĕnes, is, *a famous orator*.
 dens, tis, *tooth*.
 densus, *thick*.
 dĕni, æ, ā, *ten* (apiece).
 dĕprāvo, āre, *pervert, distort*.
 descendo, ěre, scendi, scensum, *descend, come down*.
 dĕsĕro, sĕrĕre, serui, sertum, *abandon*.
 dĕsĭno, ěre, desivi or desii, desitum, *cease, leave off*.
 dē-sum, esse, fui (S.), *am wanting, missing*.
 dĕtĕro, ěre, trivi, trĭtum, *wear out*.
 dĕterreo, ěre, *frighten, deter*.
 detritus, *see detĕro*.
 deus, *god* (App. IX).
 dĕvinco, ěre, vici, victum, *roul*.
 dĕvōro, āre, *devour*.
 dico, ěre, dixi, dictum (S.), *say, call*.
 Dictātor, Dictator (a Roman magistrate).
 dies, ĕi, *day*.
 difficĭlis, *difficult, testy, ill-natured*.
 diffido, ěre, *distrust* (dat.).
 dĭgĭtus, *finger*.
 dignus, *worthy, deserving* (abl.).
 diligĕntia, *diligence, attention*.
 diligo, ěre, lexi, lectum, *love*.
 Dionysius, *a tyrant of Sicily*.
 discĭpŭlus, *pupil*.
 disco, ěre, didĭci, *learn*.
 disjungo, ěre, *separate*.

K

- displiceo, ēre, *displease* (dat.).
 dispōno, ēre, posui, pōsitum, *arrange*.
 dissimilis, *unlike*.
 dissimilitudo, *variety*.
 diu (compar. diutius), *long, for a long time*.
 dives, divitis, *rich*.
 divido, ēre, visi, visum, *divide*.
 divinitas, *divine nature*.
 divinus, *divine*.
 divitiæ (pl.), *riches*.
 doceo, ēre, docui, doctum, *teach*.
 doctus, *part. doceo, taught, learned*.
 dōleo, ēre, *suffer pain, grieve, grieve-for*.
 dōlor, ōris, *grief, pain, resentment*.
 dōmi, *at home* (dōmum, *home, after a verb of motion*).
 dōmus, ūs, *a house*.
 dōnum (S.), *a gift, present*.
 dormio, ire, *sleep*.
 dubito, āre, *doubt, hesitate*.
 ducenti, æ, a, *two hundred*.
 dūco, ēre, duxi, ductum, *lead, bring, marry* (of a man).
 dum, *while, whilst*.
 duo, *two* (App. XV).
 duodēcim, *twelve*.
 duro, āre, *last*.
 durus, *hard, hard-hearted*.
 dux, dūcis, *leader, guide*.
 e (prep.), *out of, from*.
 edico, ēre, dixi, dictum, *make a proclamation*.
 edo, edere or esse, ēdi, ēsum, *eat*.
 edo, ēre, didi, ditum, *utter*.
 efficio, ēre, feci, fectum, *perform, make*.
 ēgeo, ēre (S.), *need* (gen. or abl.).
 ēgi, *see ago*.
 ēgo, *I* (App. XVI).
 egredior, grēdi, gressus, *go forth*.
 elegantia, *style, elegance*.
 elephas, *elephant*.
 elephantus, *elephant*.
 ēicio, ēre, licui, *draw out*.
 ēligo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, *choose*.
 ēlūdo, ēre, *baffle*.
 ēmollio, ire, *soften*.
 ēmo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, *buy*.
 ensis, is, *sword*.
 eo, ire, ivi or ii, go (141).
 eo (adv.), *thither; with 'quo,' the more* (276).
 Epaminondas, *a Theban general*.
 Ephesus, *Ephesus*.
 Epimēnides, *a Cretan poet*.
 epistōla, *a letter*.
 epulæ (pl.), *a banquet, feast*.
 ēques, equitis, *horseman*.
 ēquidem, *I for my part*.
 equitatus, ūs, *cavalry*.
 ēquito, āre, *ride*.
 ēquus, i, *horse*. Ex equo, *on horseback*.
 erro, āre, *err*.
 ērumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, *break out*.
 ēsurio, ire, *am hungry*.
 et (S.), *and, also; et — et, both — and*.
 etiam, *also, even*.
 evādo, ēre, vasi, vasum, *get clear away, escape*.
 ēvectus, *see evēho*.
 evēho, ēre, vxi, vectum, *raise*.
 ēvōlo, āre, *fly out of*.
 ex, *out of, from* (abl.).
 exclāmo, āre, *shout out, exclaim*.
 excusatio, onis, *excuse, plea*.
 exemplum, *example, instance*.
 exeo, ire, *go out* (141).
 exercitus, ūs, *army*.
 exiguus, *small*.
 existimo, āre (S.), *think*.
 exordior, ordiri, orsus, *begin*.
 exorsus, *see exordior*.
 expello, ēre, pūli, pulsum, *drive out, banish*.
 expilo, āre, *plunder, pillage*.
 ex-pōno, ēre, posui, positum, *land* (put on shore), *disembark*.
 ex-specto, āre, *expect, wait for, await*.
 exsul, exsulis, *an exile*.
 exstinguo, ēre, stinxi, *stinctum, put on, extinguish*.

extrā, *out of, beyond, outside.*

extrēmus, *last, the end of (with subst.), 211.*

fābŭla, *fable, story.*

fābŭlōsus, *full of stories, fabulous.*

fācilē (adv.), *easily; comp. facilius, superl. facillime.*

fācilis, *easy, complaisant.*

facio, ēre, feci, factum (S.), *do, make, value.*

factum, *deed, act.*

fallax, ācis, *deceitful.*

fallo, ēre, fefelli, *deceive.*

falsus, *false.*

fāma, *fame, reputation.*

fāmes, is, *hunger, starvation.*

familiaris res, *one's private estate or property.*

familiaritas, *intimacy.*

fānum, *shrine.*

fateor, fatēri, fassus, *confess, own.*

Faunus, i, *a Faun, a rustic deity.*

fēlicitas, tātis, *good-fortune, happiness.*

fēlix, icis (S.), *happy, successful, lucky.*

fēmīna, *woman.*

fere, *almost, nearly; nemo fere, hardly anybody.*

fero, ferre, tuli, latum, *bear, carry; ferre legem, to propose a law.*

ferreus, *of iron, iron, iron-hearted.*

ferrum, *iron; a razor.*

fessus, *wearily, tired.*

fidēlīter, *faithfully.*

fiducia, *confidence.*

filia, *a daughter.*

filius, i, *a son.*

finis, is, *end, limit. In pl. territory. Finem facere, to leave off.*

fio, fieri, factus, *become, am made (App. XX, D).*

flagito, āre, *demand.*

flagro, *am on fire, burn (intrans.).*

flavus, *yellow, fair-haired.*

flecto, ēre, flexi, flexum, *bend.*

fleo, flere, flevi, fletum, *weep, weep for.*

florēus, *of flowers, flowery.*

flos, floris, *a flower.*

fluctus, ūs, *a wave.*

flumen, inis (S.), *a stream, river.*

fluvius (S.), *a river.*

fodio, fodere, fodi, fossum, *dig.*

foedus, *foul, disgraceful, shameful.*

folium, *a leaf.*

foras, *out of doors (after a verb of motion).*

fore, forem, *from sum.*

fores, ium (pl.), *doors.*

foris, *out of doors.*

forma, *form, figure.*

formica, *ant.*

formōsitas, *beauty.*

forte, *by chance.*

fortis, *brave.*

fortiter, *bravely, courageously (fortius, fortissime).*

fortitūdo, dīnis, *bravery, courage.*

fortūna, *fortune.*

fossa, *a ditch, trench.*

frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, *break.*

foveo, ēre, fovi, fotum, *cherish.*

frāter, tris, *brother.*

fratricida, *a fratricide.*

fraus, fraudis, *fraud, deceit.*

frēnum, *bit, curb.*

frētus, *relying on (abl.).*

frigidus, *cold (adj.).*

frigus, ōris, *cold (subst.).*

frons, frondis, *leaf.*

fruges, pl. (S.), *fruits of the earth, a crop.*

frumentor, āri, *get corn, forage.*

frumentum, *corn.*

fruo, frui, *enjoy (abl.).*

frustrā, *in vain.*

fuga, *flight, escape from.*

fugio, ēre, fūgi, *fly, fly or escape from.*

fugo, āre, *put to flight.*

fui, *see sum.*

fungor, fungi, *discharge, perform (abl.).*

fur, furis, *a thief.*

fustis, is, *a staff, cudgel.*

futūrus, about to be; future (part. of sum).

Gādes, ium (pl.), Cadiz.

Gallus, a Gaul.

gallina, a hen.

gaudeo, ēre, gavisus sum, rejoice (156).

gaudium, joy.

gēner, gēnēri, son-in-law.

Germānus, German.

gēro, gērēre, gessi, gestum, carry, wear, wage (war), behave.

gloria, glory, ambition.

glorior, āri, boast.

grācilis, slender (102).

gradior, gradi, gressus, step, go.

Græcia, Greece.

Græcus, Greek, Grecian.

gratia, favour, kindness, gratitude; gratias agere, to return thanks.

grātūlor, āri, congratulate.

grātus, pleasing.

grāvis, heavy.

grāviter, heavily; graviter ferre, to take deeply to heart.

gressus, ūs, step.

grus, gruis, a crane.

gusto, āre, taste.

habeo, ēre, have, hold, esteem, consider.

hābito, āre, live, dwell.

Halicarnassus, a city of Caria.

hāmus, i, a hook.

Hannībal, ālis, a Carthaginian general.

hasta, spear.

haurio, ire, hausi, haustum, drain, draw.

hēdēra, ivy.

Helvētīi (pl.), a Celtic people.

heri, yesterday.

Hesperus, the evening star.

hibernus, of winter, wintry.

hiberno, āre, winter, pass the winter.

hic, this (near me), 126.

hic (adv.), here.

hircus, i, a goat.

hirundo, dīnis, a swallow.

Hispania, Spain.

histōria, history.

hodie, to-day.

homicida, murderer, homicide.

hōmo, hominis (S.), a man.

honestus, honourable.

honor, ōris, honour, distinction.

horreo, ēre, shudder, shudder at; am in dread of.

hortor, āri, exhort.

hortus, i, garden.

hostis, is (S.), enemy.

huc, hither.

humānus, natural to man, human, gentle.

hydrus, i, a water-snake.

i, imperative of eo.

ibi, there.

idem, eādem, idem, the same (174).

idōneus, fit, suitable (dat. or with prep. ad), 122.

ignārus, ignorant (gen.).

ignāvia, idleness.

ignāvus, idle.

ignis, is, fire.

ignoratio, ignorance.

ignōro, āre, am ignorant.

ignosco, ēre, pardon (dat.).

ille, that (near him), yonder.

illic, there (yonder).

imāgo, gīnis, portrait, reflection.

imbecillus, weak.

īmītor, āri, imitate.

immēmōr, immēmōris, unmindful, forgetful.

immensus, vast.

immitto, ēre, misi, missum, cast, throw.

immo, nay rather.

immortalis, immortal.

impar, impāris, odd, uneven.

impēdio, ire, hinder.

imperātor, ōris, general, commander-in-chief.

imperitus, unskilled, unskilful in (gen.).

imperium, command, power, empire.

impéro, āre (S.), *command*.
 impius, *impious*.
 impleo, ēre, plēvi, *fill*.
 imprōbus, *wicked*.
 in, prep. with acc., *into, against*;
 with abl., *in, upon, among*.
 incēdo, ēre, *walk*.
 incendium, a *conflagration, fire*.
 inceptum, *design (incipio)*.
 incertus, *uncertain*.
 incipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *begin*.
 inclūsus, *shut up*.
 incōlūmis, *safe, unhurt*.
 incredibilis, *incredible*.
 in-cultus, *uncultivated*.
 incus, cūdis, *anvil*.
 indāgo, āre, *track*.
 inde, *thence*.
 indigeo, ēre (S.), *need, require*.
 in-dignus, *unworthy*.
 indūo, ēre, dui, dūtum, *put on*.
 industria, *industry*.
 ineptus, *silly, foolish*.
 iners, inertis, *inactive, lazy*.
 in-felix, *unhappy*.
 infirmus, *weak*.
 influo, ēre, fluxi, *flow into*.
 infra (prep.), *below (acc.)*.
 ingēnium, *genius, talent, ability*.
 ingens, ntis, *huge, large*.
 ingenuus, *refined, liberal*.
 ingredior, grēdi, gressus, *enter*.
 inhibeo, ēre, *prevent*.
 inimicus (S.), *an enemy*.
 injuria, *wrong, injury*.
 inopia, *want, destitution*.
 inquam, *I say* (App. XIX).
 inscius, *unaware*. Me inscio,
without my knowledge (abl. abs.).
 insilio, ire, ui, *jump upon*.
 insons, ntis, *innocent*.
 in-spicio, spicēre, spexi, *spectum*,
look into.
 instituo, ēre, stitui, stitutum,
train.
 insuāvis, *unpleasant, disagreeable*.
 insūla, *island*.
 intelligo, ēre, lexi, lectum, *under-*
stand.
 inter, *between, among*. Inter se,
together, with or to each other.

interdum, *sometimes*.
 interest, impers. (300).
 inter-ficio, ēre, feci, *kill*.
 inter-sum, esse, fui, *am present*
at, am engaged in (dat.).
 interrōgo, āre, *ask, question*.
 intervallum, *intervening space*.
 intimus, *inmost*.
 intuens, *see intueor*.
 intueor, ēri, *gaze at or into*.
 inultus, *unavenged, unpunished*.
 in-utīlis, *useless, unserviceable*.
 in-venio, ire, vēni, ventum (S.),
find, invent, discover.
 in-vestigo, āre, *trace, discover*.
 invidēo, ēre, vidi, *envy (dat.)*.
 invitus, *unwilling*. Often to be
 translated adverbially, '*unwil-*
lingly' (p. 105, note).
 ipse, *gen. ipsius, self*.
 irascor, i, *am angry, am angry*
with (dat.).
 irātus, *part. irascor, angry*.
 irrigō, āre, *water, irrigate*.
 is, ea, id, *he, she, it* (126).
 iste, *that (near you), that of yours*.
 ita, *so, in such a manner, thus*.
 Italia, *Italy*.
 iter, itinēris, *journey, march*.
 jaceo, ēre, jacui, *lie, lie down*.
 jacio, ēre, jēci, jactum, *throw,*
hurl.
 jactus, *see jacio*.
 jacūlor, āri, *shoot*.
 jam, *already*.
 jōcans, *part. jōcor, āri, jest*.
 jōcus, i, *a jest*.
 jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum (S.), *bid,*
order.
 jucundus, *pleasant*.
 judex, ĩcis, *a judge*.
 judicium, *judgment*.
 judico, āre, *judge, decide, deter-*
mine.
 juglans, *dis, a walnut*.
 Julia, *a woman's name*.
 junior, *compar. of juvenis*.
 Jupiter, Jovis, *Jupiter* (App. IX).
 jure, *justly, rightly*.
 jussus, *see jubeo*.

- iustitia, *justice*.
 iustus, *just, valid*.
 iuvat, *it delights (impers.)*.
 iuvenis, *young, a youth*.
- lābor, ōris, *labour*.
 labōro, āre, *labour, am in trouble*.
 lac, lactis, *milk*.
 Lacedæmonius, *Lacedæmonian*.
 lacēro, āre, *tear*.
 laceſso, ēre, ivi, itum, *provoke*.
 lacrima, *a tear*.
 lacus, ūs, *a lake*.
 lædo, ēre, læsi (S.), *hurt*.
 lætus, *glad, joyful*.
 lapillus, i, *pebble*.
 latro, nis, *robber, bandit*.
 lātus, *broad*.
 lātus, part. fero.
 laudo, āre, *praise*.
 laus, dis, *praise*.
 legātus, i, *ambassador, lieutenant*.
 legio, ōnis, *a legion*.
 lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, *read, pick up*.
 leo, ōnis, *a lion*.
 lēvis, *light, fleet*.
 lēvo, āre, *raise*.
 lex, lēgis, *law*.
 libenter, *willingly* (libentius, compar.).
 liber, era, erum, *free*.
 liber, bri, *book*.
 libēri (pl.), *children*.
 libēro, āre, *set free, free*.
 liberalitas, *liberality*.
 liberalit̄er, *liberally* (liberalius, compar.).
 libertas, tatis, *liberty, freedom*.
 licet, *it is allowed*. Mihi licet, *I may*.
 lignātor, *woodman*.
 ligneus, *wooden, of wood*.
 lilium, *a lily*.
 limen, inis, *threshold*.
 liquesco, ēre, licui, *melt*.
 lit̄era, *a letter* (written character of the alphabet). Literæ, (pl.), *a letter, epistle, literature*.
 Locri (pl.), *an ancient city in Italy*.
- lōcus, i, *place*.
 longus, *long*.
 lōquax, ācis, *talkative*.
 loquor, loqui, locūtus (S.), *speak, talk*.
 lorica, *breastplate, cuirass*.
 lucerna, *lamp, candle*.
 luctus, ūs, *grief, sorrow*.
 ludibrium, *a laughing-stock*.
 ludo, ēre, lusi, lusum, *play*.
 ludus, i, *play, sport*.
 lupus, i, *wolf*.
 lux, lūcis, *light*.
 Lycurgus, *a famous lawgiver*.
- mæstus, *sad, mournful*.
 m̄gis (S.), *more*.
 magister (S.), *a master*.
 magistra, *mistress*.
 magni, *at a great price* (226).
 magnitudo, dinis, *greatness, size*.
 magnus, *great, large*.
 major, compar. of magnus.
 m̄le, badly (pejus, pessimē).
 male-dico, ere, dixi, *revile*.
 m̄le-dicus, *abusive, spiteful, scurrilous*.
 malo, malle, m̄lui, *I wish rather, prefer* (App. XX, B).
 m̄lus, *bad* (pejor, pessim̄us).
 Mala (n. pl.), *evils, misfortunes*.
 māneo, ere, mansi, *remain*.
 manifestus, *clear, manifest*.
 mānus, ūs, *hand, band* (of men, etc.).
 m̄re, is, *sea*.
 margo, ḡinis, *brink, brim*.
 marinus, *of the sea*.
 māter, tris, *mother*.
 mathēmaticus, *a mathematician, astrologer*.
 Mausōlus, *a king of Caria*. The monument erected by his wife was called the *Mausōl̄eum*.
 maximē, *very greatly*.
 maximus, *superl. of magnus*.
 medeor, ēri, *heal, cure* (dat.).
 mēdicus, *physician, doctor*.
 mēdius, *middle, midst, midmost*.
 Medus, Mede, *Median*.

melior, *compar. of bonus.*
 melius (adv.), *better.*
 mēmini, *I remember* (196, 233).
 mendax, ācis, *lying, a liar.*
 mendācium, *falsehood.*
 mens, mentis, *mind, intellect.*
 mensis, is, *month.*
 mentior, iri, *lie, tell falsehoods.*
 mereor, ēri, *deserve.*
 metior, iri, *measure.*
 metuō, ēre, metui (S.), *am afraid of, fear.*
 mētus, ūs, *fear.*
 meus, *my, mine.*
 mī, *voc. of meus.*
 miles, itis, *soldier.*
 militiā, *abroad, in the field (locative).*
 mille, *a thousand* (indecl.). Declined in pl. *millia* (App. XX).
 minimus, *smallest, least. Superl. of parvus.*
 minister, tri, *attendant.*
 mīnor, *less. Compar. of parvus.*
 mīnor, āri, *threaten* (dep.).
 mīnus (adv.), *less, in a less degree.*
 mirābilis, *wonderful.*
 miror, āri, *wonder, wonder at.*
 miser, ēra, ērum, *wretched.*
 misereor, ēri, *pity* (gen.).
 misēret (234).
 mītis, *mild, gentle.*
 mitto, ēre, misi, missum, *send.*
 mōdo, *only. Non modo — sed etiam, not only — but also.*
 mōdus, i, *manner, means, way.*
 molestus, *offensive, troublesome.*
 mōlior, iri, *contrive.*
 moneo, ēre, *advise, warn.*
 mons, tis, *mountain.*
 monstro, āre, *point out, show.*
 morbus, i, *disease.*
 mōrior, mori, mortuus, *die.*
 mōror, āri, *delay.*
 mōrōsus, *ill-humoured.*
 mors, tis, *death.*
 mortālis, *mortal.*
 mortuus, *dead* (moriōr).
 mos, mōris, *custom; pl. habits, manners, character.*

moveo, ēre, movi, motum, *move, stir.*
 mox, *soon.*
 mulcto, āre, *fine* (abl.).
 mulier, ēris, *woman.*
 multus, *much; pl. many.*
 multitudo, dīnis, *multitude.*
 mundus, i, *world, universe.*
 munio, īre, *fortify, protect.*
 munitio, onis, *fortification, defence, outwork.*
 munus, ēris (S.), *gift, reward, office.*
 murus, i, *wall.*
 mus, muris, *a mouse.*
 Musa, *a Muse.*
 mutō, āre, *change, alter.*
 nactus, *part. nanciscor, light upon, find, obtain.*
 nam, namque, *for.*
 narro, āre, *tell, relate, describe.*
 nascor, i, natus, *am born.*
 nato, āre, *swim.*
 nātus, *see nascor.*
 navigatio, *voyage.*
 nāvis, is, *ship.*
 -nē, *interrogative particle, translated by a question.*
 nē, *lest, that — not* (180, 181).
 After verbs of fearing, *that.*
 nē — quidem (with a word between), *not even.*
 nec, nēque, *nor, neither.*
 neco, āre, *kill.*
 negligens, *careless, careless about.*
 negligo, ēre, lexi, lectum, *neglect, disregard.*
 nego, āre, *deny, say — not.*
 negotium, *business, trouble.*
 nēmo (170), *no one, nobody.*
 neque, *see nec.*
 nequeo, īre (like eo), *am unable, cannot.*
 nequitia, *immorality, wickedness.*
 nervus, *nerve, sinew, muscle.*
 nescio, īre, *not know, am unconscious.*
 neuter, gen. neutrius, *neither* (of two).

nēve, neu, and *lest*, and *that* —
not, nor (180, 194).
 nidus, i, *nest*.
 niger, gra, grum, *black*.
 nihil, nil, *nothing*.
 nimis, nimium, too, *too much*.
 nimius, too great, *excessive*.
 nisi, *except, unless*.
 Nisus, a king of Megara.
 niteo, ēre, am bright, *shine*.
 nitor, ōris, *brightness, splendour*.
 nitor, niti, nisus or nixus, *strive*;
lean upon.
 nix, nivis, *snow*.
 no, nāre, *swim*.
 nōbilis, noble, *famous*.
 nōceo, ēre (S.), *injure, harm*.
 nolo, nolle, nolui, am unwilling,
not wish.
 nomen, īnis, *name*.
 non, *not*.
 non modo, *not only* (followed by
sed etiam).
 nondum, *not yet*.
 nonnē, *not* (in questions, *is not?*
does not? etc. The auxiliary
 will always stand first).
 nonnulli, *some*.
 nosco, ēre, novi, notum, *know*.
 noster, tra, trum, *our, ours*.
 nostri, *gen. pl. of ego*, p. 184.
 notitia, *knowledge*.
 novus, *new*.
 nox, noctis, *night*.
 nubes, is, *cloud*.
 nubo, ēre, nupsi, *marry* (of a
 woman).
 nudus, *bare*.
 nullus, *gen. ius*, no, *none*.
 num, interrogative when it is the
 first word. If not the first
 word, to be translated '*whether*.'
 numēro, āre, *count*.
 nummus, *coin, money*.
 nunc, *now*.
 nunquam, *never*.
 nuntio, āre, *announce, report*,
bring word.

ob (prep.), *over against, on ac-*
count of (acc.).
 obdormisco, ēre, mivi, *sleep*.
 obedio, ire, *obey*.
 obliquus, *sidelong*.
 oblitus, *see obliviscor*.
 obliviscor, i, oblitus, *forget* (gen.).
 obruo, ēre, rui, rūtum, *over-*
whelm.
 obscurus, *dark, obscure*.
 observo, āre, notice, *observe*.
 obses, sidis, *hostage*.
 obsto, āre, stiti, *oppose, hinder*.
 obtempēro, āre, *obey* (dat.).
 obtineo, ēre, *hold*.
 occasio, *opportunity*.
 oculus, i, *eye*.
 odi, I hate (L. P. § 74).
 odium, *hatred*. Odio esse, *to be*
hateful (243).
 odor, ōris, *smell, odour*.
 odōrus, *balmy, sweet-scented*.
 offēro, ferre, tuli, *offer*.
 olim, *once, formerly, hereafter*.
 olorinus, *of a swan*.
 omnino, *at all, altogether*.
 omnis, all, every. Omnes, pl.,
everybody. Omnia, *everything*.
 oneraria navis, a merchantman,
transport.
 onus, ēris, *burden*.
 opēram dare, pay attention (dat.).
 opes, *wealth, resources*.
 opinio, onis, *opinion*.
 oportet, it behoves, one ought
 (281).
 oppidānus, *of a town*, pl. towns-
 folk.
 oppidum, i, *town*.
 opprīmo, ēre, pressi, pressum,
surprise.
 oppugno, āre, attack, *besiege*.
 ops,* opis, aid. Summā ope, *with*
all one's might.
 optīmus, very good, best, *superl.*
of bonus.
 opulentus, *wealthy*.
 oratio, onis, *speech*.

* Nom. 'ops' not in use.

ōrātor, ōris, *orator*.
 ordo, dīnis, *order, rank*.
 orior, orīri, ortus, *arise, rise, spring*.
 orno, āre, *adorn*.
 oro, āre, *beg, beg for*.
 ortus, *see orior*.
 ovis, *is, sheep*.
 ovum, *egg*.

pænitet, *it repents* (234).
 pallesco, ēre, *grow pale*.
 Pan, *is, acc. Pana, a rustic deity*.
 par, *equal, even*.
 parātus, *ready, prepared* (paro).
 parco, ēre, pepercī, *spare* (dat.).
 parcus, *sparing, thrifty*.
 parens, entis, *a parent*.
 pāreo, ēre, obey (dat.).
 pārio, ēre, pepēri, partum, *produce; lay* (of a hen).
 pārō, āre, *prepare*.
 Parrhasius, *a famous painter*.
 pars, partis, *a part, size*.
 parum, *too little*.
 parvus, *small, little*. Parvi, *at a little price, cheaply*.
 pasco, ēre, pāvi, pastum, *feed*.
 pastor, ōris, *shepherd*.
 pastus, *part., see pasco*.
 pastus, ūs, *food*.
 patefactus, *opened, open* (patefacio).
 pateo, ēre, *be open, lie open*.
 pāter, tris, *father*.
 patientia, *power of endurance*.
 patria, *country, fatherland*.
 patrōnus, *advocate, patron*.
 pauci, *few*. Pauca, *a few things, a little* (n. pl.).
 paulo, *by a little, somewhat* (275).
 pauper, ēris, *poor*.
 pavo, ōnis, *peacock*.
 pavor, *panic, dread*.
 pax, pācis, *peace*.
 pecco, āre, *sin*.
 pecunia, *money*.
 pejor, *worse*. *See malus*.
 pellis, *is, skin, hide*.
 pello, ēre, pepūli, pulsum, *drive, banish*.

pendeo, ēre, *hang*.
 penna, *feather, wing*.
 penuria, *extreme want*.
 pepercī, *see parco*.
 per (prep.), *through*.
 Perdiccas, æ, *a friend of Alexander the Great*.
 perdo, ēre, didi, ditum (S.), *lose, destroy, ruin*.
 pereō, ire, ivi, or ii, *perish*.
 pergo, ēre, *proceed*.
 Pericles, *is, an Athenian statesman*.
 pericūlum, *danger, risk*.
 peritus, *skilled, skilled or skilful in* (gen.).
 perjūrus, *perjured*.
 perniciosus, *destructive, fatal, hurtful*.
 peressus, *having suffered*.
 perpetuus, *perpetual*. Perpetuo (adv.), *for ever*.
 per-sēquor, sequi, secutus, *follow up, pursue*.
 per-suadeo, ēre, suasi, *persuade* (dat.).
 per-vēnio, ire, *reach, attain, come up with*.
 pes, pēdis, *a foot*.
 pessimus, *worst* (malus).
 peto, ēre, petivi or petii, petitum (S.), *aim at, seek, sue for, ask*.
 petūlans, ntis, *forward, saucy*.
 Phaëthon, tis, *a son of Helios*.
 phasēlus, i, *yacht*.
 philosophia, *philosophy*.
 philosophus, *a philosopher*.
 Phōsphōrus, *the day-star or morning star*.
 pica, *a magpie*.
 pictor, oris, *a painter*.
 pictūra, *painting, the art of painting*.
 piget, *it irks* (207).
 pila, *a ball*.
 pingo, ēre, pinxi, pictum, *paint*.
 piscātor, *fisherman*.
 piscis, *is, fish*.
 pius, pius, *good, holy, dutiful*.
 placeo, ēre, *please* (dat.).
 planta, *plant*.

plēnus, *full*.
 plerique, *most* (S.).
 plerumque, *generally*.
 plurimus, *very much, very many*.
 plus, *more* (App. XIV). Pluris,
at a greater price, more highly.
 plus (adv.), *more* (S.).
 pluvia, *rain*.
 poculum, *cup*.
 poena, *punishment*. Pœnas per-
 solvère, *pay the penalty, suffer*
punishment.
 poëta, *a poet*.
 polliceor, eri, pollicitus, *promise*.
 Pompeius, i, *Pompey*.
 pōmum, *apple, fruit*.
 pondus, eris, *weight*.
 pono, ère, posui, positum, *place,*
lay down.
 pōpulus, i, *people*.
 porta, *gate*.
 porto, âre, *carry*.
 portus, ūs, *harbour*.
 possideo, ère, *possess*.
 possum, posse, potui, *am able,*
can.
 post (prep.), *after* (acc.).
 postea, *afterwards*.
 potens, ntis, *powerful, able*.
 potio, onis, *draught*.
 potior, iri, *gain possession of, en-*
joy (gen. or abl.).
 potus, *drunk*.
 præ (prep.), *before, owing to, com-*
pared with (abl.).
 præceptum, *precept, injunction*.
 præcipio, ère, cēpi, *enjoin, pre-*
scribe, instruct.
 præcipito, âre, *fling, throw head-*
long.
 præsidium, *guard, protection*.
 præsto, âre, stiti, *afford, excel*.
 præter (prep.), *beside* (acc.).
 prætereo, ire, *pass by, pass*.
 præteritus, *past*; n. pl. 'the past'
 (prætereo).
 prætor, ōris, *prætor*.
 pratium, *meadow*.
 primum (adv.), *first, at first*.
 primus, *first*. Primo vere, *in the*
beginning of spring (211).

princeps, *chief, leader*.
 principatus, ūs, *chief rule*.
 pristinus, *former, original*.
 prius (adv.), *before, sooner*.
 pro (prep.), *for, instead of, in be-*
half of (abl.).
 probō, âre, *sanction, approve*.
 prōdeo, ire, *go forth* (eo).
 prœlium, *battle*.
 profectus, *see proficiscor*.
 proficiscor, i, *profectus, set out,*
start.
 profundus, *deep*.
 prope (prep.), *near* (acc.).
 propior, propius, *nearer* (prope).
 propter (prep.), *on account of*
 (acc.).
 Proserpina, *Proserpine, a heathen*
deity.
 prosilio, ire, silui, *leap forth*.
 pro-sum, prodesse, fui, *do good to*
 (dat.), p. 100, note.
 prōvidentia, *providence*.
 proximus, *nearest, next*. Superl.
 of prope.
 prudentia, *prudence, foresight*.
 Ptolemæus, *Ptolemy*.
 pudet, *it shames* (207).
 pudor, *shame*.
 puella, *girl*.
 puer, eri, *boy*.
 pugna, *a fight, battle*.
 pugno, âre, *fight*.
 pulcer, cra, crum, *beautiful*.
 pullus, *young* (of a bird).
 punio, ire, *punish*.
 purpureus, a, um, *purple*.
 putāmen, inis, *shell, husk*.
 puteus, i, *well, pit*.
 puto, âre (S.), *suppose, think*.
 quadraginta, *forty* (indecl.).
 quadringenti, æ, a, *four hun-*
dred.
 quero, ère, quæsi (S.), *seek,*
look for, enquire.
 qualis, e, *such as, as*.
 quā, *than, as*. Before an adj.,
 'how,' 'what.'
 quā, maximus, *as great as pos-*
sible.

quàm plurimi, *as many as possible.*

quando, *when.*

quanto, followed by a comparative (276).

quantum, *how much.*

quantus, *how great.*

quare, *why, wherefore.*

quattuor, *four* (indecl.).

-que (S.), *and.*

quercus, *ûs, an oak.*

qui, quæ, quod, *who, which, that; after idem, 'as.'*

qui (interrog.), *who? what?* (187).

quia, *because.*

quid? *what? why?*

quidam, quædam, quoddam, *a certain, some, one, a.*

quidem, *indeed. Nō — quidem, not even.*

quiesco, *êre, quiëvi, rest.*

quiëtus, *quiet.*

quin, *but that, without* (288).

quinque, *five* (indecl.).

quis, quæ, quid, *who? what?*

quis, quâ, quid (indef.), *any.*

quispiam, *somebody, some, any one.*

quisquam, *anybody.*

quisque, *each.*

quisquis, *whosoever.*

quo, *that. Quo melius, that the better* (277).

quod, *because.*

quōmīnus (289).

quot, *how many, as many as.*

quotannis, *every year.*

quum (cum), *when, although, since, whereas. If followed by tum, 'both,' tum being 'and especially' (p. 92, note).*

rādix, *icis, root.*

ramōsus, *branching.*

rapidus, *rapid.*

ratio, *onis, reason, an account.*

recens, *ntis, fresh.*

recipio, *êre, cēpi, ceptum, admit, receive.*

recoḡor, *ārī, recollect, remember.*

recte (adv.), *rightly.*

recūso, *āre, refuse, object.*

redeo, *ire, return* (eo).

reddo, *êre, didi, dītum, give back, restore.*

redūco, *êre, duxi, ductum, lead back, draw or carry back.*

rēfēro, *ferre, tūli, bring back.*

rēfert, *impers. (300).*

refūgio, *êre, fūgi, fly back.*

rēgina, *queen.*

regius, *royal.*

regnum, *kingdom, sovereignty.*

rego, *êre, rexi, rectum, rule.*

relinquo, *êre, liqui, lictum, leave.*

reliquus, *remaining, the rest.*

remedium, *remedy, cure.*

reminiscor, *i, remember.*

remōveo, *êre, mōvi, withdraw, take away.*

repente, *suddenly.*

reperio, *ire, reppēri, repertum* (S.), *find.*

reprehendo, *êre, prehendi, prehensum, find fault with.*

res, *affair, thing, undertaking, circumstance.*

resisto, *êre, restīti, resist.*

respondeo, *êre, spondi, answer, reply.*

res-publica, *commonwealth, res-public, state* (App. IX).

rete, *is, net.*

retineo, *keep back, retain.*

rēvōco, *āre, call back, recall.*

Rhēnus, *i, the river Rhine.*

Rhōdānus, *i, the river Rhone.*

rideo, *êre, risi, risum, laugh, laugh at, smile at.*

rigeo, *êre, rigui, am frozen.*

ripa, *bank.*

risus, *ûs, smile, laughter.*

rivus, *i (S.), brook, sluice.*

rogo, *āre, ask.*

Roma, *Rome.*

Romānus, *Roman.*

Rōmūlus, *Romulus, the founder of Rome.*

rosa, *a rose.*

rostrum, *beak.*

ruber, *bra, brum, red.*

rugio, ire, *roar*.
 ruo, ěre, *rush, tumble down*.
 rupe, is, *rock*.
 rure, *from the country*.
 ruri, *in the country* (locative).
 rus (S.), *the country*; 'into the country' (after a verb of motion).

sacrilegus, *sacrilegious*.
 sæpe, *often* (sæpius, sæpissime).
 Saguntum, *a town in Spain*.
 saluber, bris, bre, *wholesome, healthy*.
 salus, ūtis, *safety, health*.
 salūto, āre, *salute*.
 sanguis, ĩnis, *blood*.
 sānus, *sound*.
 sapiens, ntis, *wise*.
 sapientia, *wisdom*.
 sapio, ěre, *am wise*.
 satio, āre, *satisfy*.
 sātis, *enough, sufficient*.
 satisfacio, ěre, *satisfy, make amends to* (dat.).
 saxum, *stone, rock*.
 scientia, *knowledge*.
 scio, scire, *know*.
 Scipio, onis, *a famous Roman general*.
 scriptor, oris, *writer*.
 scutum, *shield*.
 Scylla, *a daughter of Nisus*.
 se, acc. of sui, sese, *strengthened form of se* (172, 173).
 secundus, *favourable, prosperous*.
 sed (S.), *but*.
 sēdeo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, *sit*.
 sēdūlus, *busy, industrious*.
 seges, ětis (S.), *corn-field*.
 semel, *once, once for all*.
 semper, *always*.
 senātus, ūs, *senate*.
 senecta, {
 senectus, tutis, } *old age*.

senex, senis, *old, an old man*.
 sensus, ūs, *feeling, consciousness*.
 sententia, *opinion*.
 sentio, ire, sensi, sensum (S.), *feel, think*.
 sepelio, ire, *bury*.
 septem, *seven*.
 septimus, *seventh*.
 sepulcrum, *tomb, sepulchre*.
 sequor, sequi, secūtus, *follow*.
 sermo, ōnis, *talk, conversation*.
 serpo, ěre, serpsi, *creep, crawl*.
 serus, *late, too late*.
 servio, ire, *am a slave to, serve* (dat.).
 servus, i, *a slave*.
 sevērus, *strict, stern*.
 seu, *see sive*.
 sexcēnti, æ, a, *six hundred*.
 si, *if*.
 sic, *so, thus*.
 sidus, ěris (S.), *star*.
 silentium, *silence*.
 sileo, ěre, *am silent, still*.
 silva, *wood forest*.
 similis, *like** (gen. or dat.), 102.
 simul, *at the same time, together*.
 simūlo, āre, *pretend*.
 sine (prep.), *without* (abl.).
 sīno, ěre, sivi, *suffer, permit*.
 sitiens, *thirsty* (sitio).
 sitio, ire, *am thirsty, thirst for, thirst*.
 sive, *whether, or* (316).
 socius, i, *ally, confederate*.
 Sōcrātes, is, *an Athenian philosopher*.
 sol, sōlis, *the sun*.
 soleo, ěre, solitus, *am accustomed* (156).
 sollers, rtis, *skilful*.
 Solon, ōnis, *an Athenian law-giver*.
 solum, *only*.
 solus, gen. solius, *alone, only*.

* With gen. likeness in character or disposition is denoted, with dat. likeness in appearance. The genitive is the more common, and is always used with Personal Pronouns.

- solūtus, *part. solvo.*
 solvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, *loose, free, release*; solvere naves, *to weigh anchor.*
 somnio, āre, *dream.*
 somnium, *a dream.*
 somnus, i, *sleep.*
 sōnus, i, *sound, noise.*
 Sōphōcles, is, *a famous Greek tragic poet.*
 sordīdus, *mean.*
 sōror, ōris, *sister.*
 spargo, ēre, sparsi, sparsum, *scatter.*
 spectātus, *tried (specto).*
 spectro, āre (S.), *look, or gaze at, see.*
 speculātor, oris, *looker-out, spy, watchman.*
 spelunca, *cave, cavern.*
 sperno, ēre, sprēvi, sprētum, *despise.*
 spēro, āre, *hope, hope for.*
 spes, spei, *hope, expectation.*
 spiceus, *of ears of corn.*
 spolio, āre, *deprive, rob.*
 statim, *immediately.*
 statuo, ēre, *determine.*
 sterilis, *barren.*
 sto, stāre, stēti, *stand.*
 studeo, ēre, *pay attention (dat.), am anxious, ambitious.*
 studiosus, *fond, attentive.*
 studium, *desire, pursuit, attachment to.*
 stulte (adv.), *foolishly.*
 stultitia, *folly.*
 stultus, *foolish; a fool.*
 suadeo, ēre, suasi, *advise; hoc suadeo, I give this advice.*
 sub (prep.), *under (acc. of motion, abl. of rest), near to.*
 sūbitus, *sudden.*
 submissē (adv.), *lowly.*
 submissus, *lowered (sub-mitto).*
 sub-mōtus, *removed, taken away (submoveo).*
 subter (prep.), *under (acc. or abl.).*
 succurro, ēre, curri, *succour (dat.).*
- sudo, āre, *am in a perspiration, sweat.*
 sufficio, ēre, feci, *suffice, am sufficient.*
 sui (172, 173).
 sum, esse, fui, *am, exist (117).*
 summus, *highest, topmost, top, chief (211).*
 super (prep.), *over, upon, beyond.*
 superbus, *proud.*
 superior, *higher.*
 supēro, āre, *overcome.*
 supplicium, *punishment.*
 suppono, ēre, posui, positum, *place under.*
 supra (prep.), *above, beyond.*
 surdus, *deaf.*
 suscipio, ēre, cēpi, ceptum, *undertake.*
 sustineo, ēre, tinui, tentum, *sustain, endure.*
 suus, *his own, her own, its own; his, her, its (173); sui (pl.), a man's friends.*
 Syracūsae, arum (pl.), *Syracuse.*
- taceo, ēre, *am silent, hold my tongue, am silent about.*
 tædet, *it disgusts; tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life (234).*
 talentum, *a talent.*
 talis, *e, such.*
 tam, *so; with adj., so, such.*
 tamdiu, *so long.*
 tamen, *yet, nevertheless (344).*
 tandem, *at length.*
 tango, ēre, tetigi, tactum, *touch.*
 tanto, *by so much, the (with a comparative), 276.*
 tantum, *only; with gen., so much (229).*
 tantus, *so great.*
 taurus, i, *a bull.*
 tego, ēre, texi, tectum, *cover, hide, protect.*
 telum, *weapon, missile.*
 tēmērē, *rashly.*
 temeritas, tatis, *rashness.*
 tempestas, tatis, *weather, storm.*
 templum, *temple.*
 tempus, ōris, *time.*

teneo, ēre, *hold, retain, maintain, occupy.*

tener, ēra, ērum, *tender.*

tenuitas, *slenderness.*

terra, *earth, land.*

terreo, ēre, *frighten.*

terrītus, *frightened* (part. of terreo).

tertius, *third.*

Thessālī, orum, *the Thessalians.*

timeo, ēre (S.), *fear.*

timīdus, *timid, cowardly, a coward.*

timor, ōris, *fear.*

tondeo, ēre, totondi, tonsum, *clip, crop, shave.*

tonsor, oris, *barber.*

torques, is, or torquis, is, *a chain* (for the neck), *collar.*

totus, gen. totius, *whole.*

trabs, trābis, *a beam.*

tragedia, *tragedy.*

trajicio, jēci, *cross.*

trans (prep.), *across* (acc.).

trans-eo, īre, *pass over, cross.*

trans-figo, ēre, fixi, *run through.*

trans-mitto, ēre, misi, missum, *cross.*

trecenti, æ, a, *three hundred.*

tres, tria, *three* (App. XV).

triangulum, *a triangle.*

tristis, *sad.*

Trōja, *Troy.*

Tullus Hostilius, *the third king of Rome.*

tum, *then.* If preceded by *quum* (cum), *'and especially.'*

tunica, *tunic.*

turdis, i, *thrush.*

turpis, *disgraceful.*

turris, is, *tower, howdah.*

Tuscūlum, *a town of Latium.*

tutus, *safe.*

tuus, *thy, thine; your, yours* (when one person is addressed).

tyrannus, i, *tyrant.*

ubi, *where; also interrogative, where?*

ubivis, *anywhere, where you will.*

ullus, gen. ullius, *any.*

ultimus, *last.*

ultor, ōris, *avenger.*

ultrā (prep.), *beyond* (acc.).

umbra, *shade, shadow.*

unde, *whence, whence?*

unquam, *ever.*

unus, gen. unius, *one* (never used for Engl. indef. article 'a. '), 105.

urbs, urbis, *city.*

urgeo, ēre, ursi, *urge, urge on.*

urna, *pitcher.*

uro, ēre, ussi, ustum, *burn, parch.*

usquam, *anywhere.*

usus, ūs, *use, experience.*

ut, *as, in order that, so that, as to* (after 'such,' 'so').

uterque, gen. utriusque, *each* (of two), *both.*

utilis, *useful, serviceable, expedient, good* (with *ad*), p. 47, note.

utinam, *would that!* (always with subj., 302).

utor, i, usus, *use, employ, exercise, wear* (abl.).

uxor, ōris, *wife.*

vafer, fra, frum, *cunning.*

vagor, āri, *wander.*

valeo, ēre, *am strong.*

vāpulo, āre, *am beaten* (250).

vātes, is, *bard, poet.*

vel, or — or; vel — vel, *either — or, partly — partly* (317).

vellus, ēris, *fleece.*

vēlox, ōcis, *swift.*

vēnāticus cānis, *hound.*

vēnātor, ōris, *hunter, huntsman.*

vendo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, *sell.*

vēneo, īre, īvi, or ii (venībam), *am sold* (eo), 250.

vēnio, īre, vēni, ventum, *come.*

vēnor, āri, *hunt.*

ventūrus, fut. part. venio.

ventus, i, *wind.*

Vēnus, ēris, *Venus, the goddess of Love.*

ver, vēris, n., *spring.*

verbum, *word.*

vereor, ĕri, verĭtus (S.), *fear.*

verisimilis, *probable.*

vĕritas, tatis, *truth.*

vĕro, vĕrum, *but* (344).

vĕrus, *true.*

vescor, i, *feed-upon, live-upon* (abl.).

vespĕri, *in the evening* (locative).

vester, tra, trum, *your, yours*

(when more than one person is addressed, or if in addressing one person, others of the same nation or class are included).

vestigium, *track, footstep.*

vestis, is, *robe, garment, dress.*

vetĭtus, *forbidden* (veto).

veto, ĕre, vetui, vetĭtum, *forbid.*

vĕtus, gen. vetĕris, *old.*

via, way, road.

viātor, oris, *traveller.*

victor, oris, *conqueror.* Adjectively (in apposition), *victorious.*

victoria, *victory.*

victus, ūs, *food, means of life.*

victus, *part of vinco.*

vicus, i, *street.*

video, ĕre, vidi, visum (S.), *see.*

videor, ĕri, *seem.*

vigil, ilis, *a watchman.*

vigilia, *watch.*

viginti, *twenty* (indecl.).

vincio, ĭre, vinxi, victum, *bind.*

vinco, ĕre, vici, victum, *conquer.*

vindex, ĭcis, *champion.*

vir, viri (S.), *man.*

virgo, glinis, *virgin.*

virtus, tūtis, *virtue, merit, valour.*

vis, *force, violence, might.* Pl., vires, *strength* (App. IX).

vitium (S.), *vice, natural defect, distemper, plague.*

vito, ĕre, avoid, shun.

vitreus, *of-glass, glass.*

vitiĭpĕro, ĕre, *abuse.*

vivo, ĕre, vixi, victum, *live.*

vix, *scarcely.*

vōco, ĕre, *call.*

vōlo, ĕre, *fly.*

volo, velle, volui, *wish, am willing* (App. XX, B).

voluptas, tatis, *pleasure.*

volvo, ĕre, volvi, volūtum, *roll.*

vox, vocis, *voice.*

Vulcānus, *Vulcan, the god of fire.*

vulnĕro, ĕre, *wound.*

vulnus, ĕris, *a wound.*

vulpes, is, *a fox.*

vultus, ūs, *countenance, expression.*

Zeuxis, *a celebrated Greek painter.*

GENERAL INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, except where 'p.' indicates a page.

- Ablative**, the, 248-275.
Ablative Absolute, 255-267, 341.
 — of Participles ends in *-i*, 95.
Ablative, signs of, 36.
 — of Agent, 37, 85, 249.
 — of Cause, 249.
 — of Cost, 256.
 — of Instrument, 249.
 — of Manner, 249.
 — of Quality, 249.
 — of Place, 259, 260.
 — of Time, 255.
 — of thing compared, 270.
 — denoting Measure of Difference, 275.
 — governed by Prepositions, 37.
 — of Adjectives of 3rd Decl. ends in *-i*, 95.
 — Plural of Nouns of 4th Decl. p. 12.
Abundance and *Want*, words expressing, 233.
ac, see *atque*.
acer, declined, 104.
Accusative and **Infinitive**, 160-162.
 — double, 216.
 — cognate, 215.
 — of the Nearer Object, *ib*.
 — of Place, 217.
 — of Space, 219.
 — of Time, 218.
 — with Prepositions, 220.
 — in *-em* or *-im*, 35.
Active Voice, 80.
Active Sentences may be changed into the **Passive**, 84, 85.
Adjectives, Agreement of, 23, 24.
 — Comparison of, 98-103.
 — Declension of, App. XI-XV.
 — in *-er*, *-us*, 22.
Adjectives in *as*, *rs*, *z*, 95.
 — position of, 24, 31.
 — used Adverbially, p. 105, note.
 — used Substantively, 75.
 — used with Ablative, 254.
 — used with Supine in *-u*, 140.
Adverbs, comparison of, 277.
 — position of, p. 44, note.
 — 'against,' after *exhort*, *warn*, etc., Ex. 69.
Agent, Ablative of, 37, 85, 249.
 — Dative of, 133, 245.
alius, 105.
alter, 105.
 — 'am' not always a sign of the **Passive** ('*am come*'), 93, 155.
an, or 'whether,' 296, 299.
Anomalous Verbs, App. XX.
Antecedent, the, 165-168.
 — 'any' with *ne*, *num*, *si*, 198, 202.
Aorist, the, 93.
 — distinguished from **Perf.** and **Imperf.**, 94.
Appendix, pp. 175-192.
Apposition, 209, 210.
 — Noun, place of, *ib*.
Article, none in Latin, 7.
 — 'as' after '*the same*,' 174.
atque (see **Synonymes**).
Attraction, Gerundive, 130.
aut (**Vocab.** 29), p. 81.
autem, 344.

B

belli, 261.

C

Cases, 3-7.

— in English, 6.

ceteri, 211.
Character, the, 8.
 Comparison of Adjectives, 98-103.
 — of Adverbs, 277.
 Complement, Dative of, 243.
 Compounds of *qui*, *quis*, App. XVII.
 — of '*sum*,' 240, 241.
 Conditional Sentences, 212.
 Conjugation, p. 14.
 Conjunctions, 344-346.
 — which are always found with Subjunctive, 302.
 Consecution of Tenses, 182.
 Consecutive '*ut*,' 185.
 Contents, Table of, p. vii.
 Copulative Verbs, 169.
 Cost, Ablative of, 256.
Crude Form, p. 2.
cum (Prep.), 37, 125.
 — appended to *me*, *te*, etc., 125.
cum, '*when*,' 200.
cum (quum), '*since*,' '*although*,' 358.

D

Dative, the, 238.
 — the case of the Remoter Object, *ib.*
 — of the Agent, 133.
 — (Commodi) the Person '*for*' or '*to whom*,' 239.
 — Complement, 243.
 — Purpose, *ib.*
 — general rules for, 240.
 — various signs of, *ib.*
 Declensions, how distinguished, 9-11.
 — rules for Gender in, App. X.
 — Table of, 13.
 Defective Verbs, App. XIX.
 Deponents, 156, 157.
 — only have Perf. Part. with Active meaning, *ib.*
 — must not be used as Passives, *ib.*
 Desiderative Verbs, App. XXII.
 Differences of Idiom, p. 166.
 '*do*,' '*did*,' 49, 73.

domi, 261; *domo*, 259; *domum*, 217.
domus declined, App. VII.
 Duration of Time, how expressed, 218.

E

Enclitic, p. 26, note.
eo, '*I go*,' 141.
eo — *quo* ('the' — 'the'), 276.
esse (sum), 117.
esse = *ēdere* (*ēdo*), App. XX, F.
extremus, 211.

F

facilis, 102.
 Factitive Verbs, 216.
Final '*ut*,' '*nē*,' 181.
 Finite Verb, the, p. 14.
fiō, 250.
 Flexion, 2.
 '*for*' when translated by *pro*, p. 99, note.
foras, 217.
foris, 261.
 Frequentative Verbs, App. XXII.
Fulness and *want*, words expressing, 233.
 Future after '*hope*,' '*promise*,' '*threaten*,' Diff. of Idiom, 6.
 Future Imperative, when used, 192.
 Future-Perfect not a tense of Subj. Mood, p. 32, note.
 — Infinitive Passive, how formed, 150.

G

Gender, 18-21.
 — Rhyming Rules for, App. X.
 Genitive after '*remember*,' '*pity*,' '*forget*,' 233, 234.
 — of Author or Possessor, 30, 224.
 — of Quality, 227.
 — of Thing divided (Partitive), 228.

- Genitive of Value, 226.
 — with Adverbs, 229.
 — of 'est' ('It is the duty of,' etc.), 225.
 — of Neuter Adjectives expressing Quantity, 229.
 — of *Objectivæ*, 232.
 — of *Subjectivæ*, 223.
 — Position of, 32.
 — variously translated, 235.
 — Plural in *-ium, um*, p. 3.
Gerundivæ, the, 128-134.
Gerundivæ Attraction, 130, 131.
 — of Verbs governing Dative, 245.

H

- 'have,' sign of the Present Perfect, 93.
 'having,' how translated, 157, 200, 266.
hic, 126.
 'his' (her), translated by *ejus*; by *suius*, 173, and p. 45, note.
Historic Tenses, 182.
 'humi,' 261.

I

- idem*, 174.
 Idiom, Differences of, pp. 166-8.
ille, 126.
 Imparissyllabic Nouns, p. 3.
 Imperative Mood, the, 190-195.
 Imperfect, 50, 74.
 Impersonal Verbs, 204-206.
 — regularly conjugated in 3rd Person, 207.
imus, 211.
 Inceptive or Inchoative Verbs, App. XXII.
 Indefinite Pronoun 'quis,' 198.
 Indirect Questions, 296.
 Infinite, the Verb, 108.
 Infinitive, the, as Object, 116, 161, 162.
 — as Subject, *ib.*
 — Future Passive, how formed, 150.

- Infinitive Prolative, 116.
 — the Verb-noun, 112, 113.
 — with Accusative, 160-162.
 Inflexion, 2.
 'in haste,' p. 105, note.
 interest, 300.
 Interrogations, 292-299.
 Interrogative Particles, 201.
 — Pronouns, 187.
 Intransitive Verbs, 55.
 — used Impersonally in the Passive, 206.
 — used Transitive, 308.
 — with Cognate Accusative, 215.
ipse, 174.
iri, 150.
 Irregular Comparison, App. XIII.
 — Nouns, App. IX.
 — Verbs, App. XX.
is, 126.
iste, ib.
it is, it was, Ex. 79.
 'it is pleasant to play,' 116.

L

- licet, licuit*, ('may,' 'might'), 281.
licet, 'although,' 302.
 Locative, the, 261.

M

- 'may,' 'might,' 281.
medius, 211.
memini, 196, 233.
 Memorabilia, p. 149.
 'men' omitted, 75.
-met, added as suffix, App. XVI.
militiæ, 261.
miseret, 234.
miseror,
miseror, } 233, note.
miseresco, }
moneo, with *ut, nē*, 181.
 — with Acc. and Infin., 184, note.

N

- nē*, enclitic, 201

nē, Final Conjunction, 180, 181, 195.
 — with Verbs of Fearing, 285.
nemo, p. 68.
nē, *non*, 285.
nē — *quidem*, 142.
nē quis, 199, 202.
neve, *neu*, 180, 194.
nonne, 201.
nostrī, *nostrum*, App. XVI.
 'not — even,' 142.
nullus, 105.
num, 201.
num quis, 202.

O

Object, the, 54-56.
 — Nearer, 215.
 — Remoter, *ib.*
 Objective Genitive, 232-235.
 Oblique Cases, 5.
obliviscor, 238.
 'of,' 349, 351.
oportet, 281.
 'ought,' *ib.*

P

pœnitet, 234.
 Parisyllabic Nouns, p. 8.
 Participle in *-ing*, 356.
 Participial Constructions, 319-348.
 Participles, 145-147.
 — declined like Adjectives, 23, 95.
 — must agree with Subject, 153.
 — used like Adjectives, 147.
 — used like Substantives, *ib.*
 Participle Future in *-rus*, meanings of, 147.
 — Perfect Active, want of, how supplied, 146, 200, 266.
 Partitive Genitive, 228.
 Passive Voice, 80.
 Perfect Tense, 91-94.
 Periphrastic Conjugation, 148-150.
 Personal Pronouns (see Pronouns), p. 47.

Personal Pronouns generally omitted, 48.
piget, 234.
 Place at which, 260, 261.
 — whence, 259.
 — whither, 217.
 Pluperfect, 91, 94.
plus, App. XIV.
 Possessive Pronouns, omitted unless emphatic, p. 26, note.
possum, 117.
potior (Abl. and Gen.), 254.
 Predicate, 47.
 Prepositions, use of, 77.
 — with Ablative, App. XXIII, A.
 — with Accusative, App. XXIII, B.

— omitted, 260.
 Present Tense, 51.
 Present Perfect, 93, 94.
 Price, 226, 256.
 Primary Tenses, 182.
primus, 211.
 Prohibitions, 190-195.
 Prolative Infinitive, 116.
 Pronouns, p. 47.
 — declined, App. XVI.
 — Definitive, do.
 — Demonstrative (p. 47), do.
 — Emphatic, do.
 — Indefinite, do.
 — Interrogative, do.
 — Personal (p. 47), do.
 — Possessive, do.
 — Reflexive, do.
 — Relative, do.
 — Unemphatic, do.
 — used Adjectively, 124.
 — used Substantively, 75, 187.
prosum, p. 100.
puget, 234.

Q

Quality, Ablative of, 249.
 — Genitive of, 227.
quàm in comparison, 271.
 — when omitted, *ib.*
quamvis, 302.
quanto — *tanto*, 276.
quasi, 302.

Quasi-Passive Verbs, 250.
 Questions on the Syntax, p. 172.
qui (*quis*), compounds of, App. XVII.
qui (Relative), various uses of, 314.
 — with Subjunctive, 305.
quin, 288.
quis (Indefinite), 198.
 — (Interrogative), 187.
quo (Final), 277.
 — with Comparatives, *ib.*
quo — *eo*, 276.
quominus, 289.
quum, see *cum* (Conjunction).
quum — *tum*, p. 92.

R

-re or *-ris* in Passive Voice, 82.
refert, Impers., 300.
 Reflexive Pronoun, the, 172, 173.
 Relative Pronoun, the, 165-168.
 — omitted in English, 168.
 — place in Apposition, 213.
 — position of, p. 69, note.
 Relative Clause, 168.
reliquus, 211.
reminiscor, 233.
rure, 259.
ruri, 261.
rus, 217.

S

scribere ad, p. 53, note.
 Semi-Deponent Verbs, 156.
 Sequences of Tenses, 182.
 'shall,' 'will,' p. 14, 162.
 'should,' 'would,' 162.
similis, 102, 242.
si quis, 198, 202.
sive (*seu*), 316, 317.
soleo, 156.
solus, 105.
 Stem, the, 8.
 — of a Noun, 16.
 — of a Verb, 190.
sub with Ablative, p. 25.
 — with Accusative, *ib.*
 Subject, the, 47.

Subject, the, of a Finite Verb, *ib.*
 — of the Verb Infinite, *ib.*
 Subjective Genitive, 32, 223.
 Subjunctive, 177-179.
 — with 'ut' expressing Purpose, 180-182.
 — — expressing Consequence, 185.
 — with Imperative Force, 193.
 — often translated by English Indicative, 185.
 'such,' when to be translated by *tam*, *adeo*, 350.
sui (*suus*), 172, 173.
sum, 117.
 — takes the same Case after *as* before it, *ib.*
 — Compounds of, 240.
 — — with Dative, *ib.*

summus, 211.
 Superlative, how formed, 100-102.
 Supines, 137.
 — in *u*, 140.
 Synonymes, Table of, p. 169.
 Syntax, Questions on, p. 172.

T

tedet, 234.
tamquam (*tanquam*), 302.
 Tense, p. 14.
 Tenses in English, 46, 49.
 'that' followed by 'the' with a Comparative, 277.
 'that' after 'the same,' 174.
 — a sign of the Infinitive, 160.
 — omitted, *ib.*
 'that no one,' 'that nothing,' 199, 202.
 'that of' (those of) after *quàm*, 272.
 'that of' (those of), 278.
 'that' = 'in order that' (Purpose), 180-182.
 — expressing a Consequence, 185.
the — *the*, 276.
 'thing,' 'things,' omitted, 75, 76.
 Time at which, when, 255.
 — how long, 218.

- 'to' not always a sign of the Dative, 32.
 — with Dative omitted in English, 240, 241.
 — not a part of the Infinitive, 113.
 — expressing Purpose (= in order to), 180-182.
 'to be,' uses of compared, 357.
 'too — to,' 307, b.
totus, 211.
 Trajective Words, 238.
 — Verbs, 239.
 — — used Impersonally in the Passive, 244.
 Trajective-Transitive Verbs, 238.
 Transitive, meaning of, 55.
 — Verbs, 54.
 — — used Intransitively, 130, 206.
 — and Intransitive Verbs in English, 311.
tum — *quum*, p. 92.

U

- ullus*, 105.
 Unipersonal Verbs, 204, note.
unus, 105.
ut Consecutive, 185.
 — Final, 180-182.
 — with Verbs of *fearing*, 285.
utinam, 302.
ut nemo, ut nullus, etc., 199.

V

- v* dropped in Tenses formed from Perfect Stem, p. 59, note.

- vapulo*, 250.
vel — *vel*, 316, 317.
vendo, p. 105, note.
veneo, 250.
 Verb-Finite, p. 14.
 — Infinite, 108.
 Verb-noun, the, 112.
 Verbs of fearing, 285.
 — hindering, 288, 289.
 — 3rd Conj. in -io, 66.
 — which govern Ablative, 253, 254.
 — which govern Dative, used Impersonally in the Passive, 240-244.
 Verb, position of in sentence, 58.
vereor ne, vereor ut, 285.
vestri, vestrum, App. XVI.
volo, 117.

W

- Want and Abundance*, words expressing, 233.
 'was,' not always a sign of the Passive ('was come' = 'had come'), 93, 155.
 'what' = 'that which,' 'those things which,' 166, 187.
 'what,' when to be translated by *quàm*, 350.
 'whether,' 316, 317.
 'whether' — 'or,' 299.
 'will,' 'shall,' p. 15; 162.
 'with speed,' 249.
 'without,' 288.
 'would,' 'should,' 162.

1

2

A DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

OF THE

SCHOOL SERIES

OF THE LATE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

LATIN.

Henry's First Latin Book. Twenty-third Edition.
12mo. 3s.

The object of this Work is to enable the youngest boys to master the principal difficulties of the Latin language by easy steps. At first only the third person singular of a few tenses of the verb, and one case of a noun are used, the dependent words in the sentence being gradually introduced. Each lesson in Grammar is followed by a Vocabulary, an Exercise in English for translation into Latin, and one in

Latin for translation into English, the work thus forming an easy progressive Grammar, Exercise, and Construing Book.

Great attention has lately been given to the improvement of what may be called its mechanical parts. The Vocabularies have been much extended, and greater uniformity of reference has been secured.

Supplementary Exercises to Henry's First Latin Book.

By George Birkbeck Hill, B.A., Pembroke College, Oxford,
and one of the Head Masters of Bruce Castle School. 12mo.
Second Edition. 2s.

In many Schools where "Henry's First Latin Book" is used, a want of additional Exercises has been felt. This it is now intended to supply by a little book merely supplementary, containing no new rules, and but few new words. The sentences are either modifications of those in the original

work, or translations from some Latin author. By far the greater part of the phrases, in fact, have been taken from Cæsar, Cicero, Livy, and Sallust. The Exercises are numbered to correspond with those in Henry's First Latin Book, and the references given are all to the same Work.

A Second Latin Book, and Practical Grammar. Intended as a Sequel to Henry's First Latin Book. Eleventh Edition. 12mo. 4s.

This Work is intended for pupils who are already able to *conjugate with accuracy*, and places before them longer sentences for translation, into which relative and other dependent clauses are gradually introduced. The Grammar includes a short treatise on Word-

building, with the meaning of the prefixes and suffixes of verbs, substantives, and adjectives. Each Exercise is accompanied by a vocabulary, in which the principles of word-building given in the Grammar are *practically applied*.

Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome, from *Cornelius Nepos*, *Justin*, &c. With English Notes, Rules for Construing, Questions, Geographical Lists, &c. Eighth Edition. 12mo. 4s.

This Work is an Epitome of Grecian, Persian, and Roman History, chronologically arranged. The chapters in Roman History (taken from Eutropius) are intended to be read first, being

sufficiently easy for a pupil who has been through Henry's First Latin Book. Historical questions on the Different Periods with answers are added.

Eclogæ Ovidianæ, with English Notes. (From the Elegiac Poems.) Fourteenth Edition, revised. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

The notes explain the Historical and Mythological allusions, construction, &c., and point out any peculiarities in the structure of the verses. There is added a useful table of the declension of Greek Nouns, and rules for the formation of Patronymics. The great

object of the notes is to teach a boy to construe not only correctly, but idiomatically, and by attending to the differences between the Latin and English modes of expressing the same thought, to gain an insight into the construction of both languages.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition. Part I. Seventeenth Edition. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

The rules for the government and arrangement of words, and the Idioms of the Latin language, are given in short lessons, and illustrated by examples from the best authors: these are to be imitated in the exercises that follow, which are so arranged that the rules are impressed on the memory by *very frequent repetition*.

Much attention has been paid to Synonymes and to the use of the Subjunctive in Oblique Narration, and with Relatives and Relative Adverbs. Throughout the book one object is steadily kept in view, that of making the *general construction of sentences* of more importance than the *mere government of cases*.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part II.; containing the Doctrine of Latin Particles. Fifth Edition. 8vo. 8s.

This Work, which is on the same principles as Part I., but intended for more advanced pupils, explains more particularly the arrangement of words in a Latin sentence, and the nice distinctions which exist between the different adverbs and conjunctions: in illustration copious extracts are

given from the best Prose authors, the sentences for translation are of considerable length: a Vocabulary, giving many English phrases idiomatically expressed in Latin, and an Antibarbarus guard against the mistakes usually made by beginners.

Cornelius Nepos; with Critical Questions and Answers, and an imitative Exercise on each Chapter. Fifth Edition. 12mo. 4s.

The object of this Work is to accustom the pupil to make himself acquainted with the style of the author *he is reading*, and to note the peculiarities and differences of construction

of Latin authors. For this purpose, questions on the arrangement and construction of sentences, and on the usage and meanings of words are given for each chapter, with answers, ex-

planations, and parallel passages, followed by an exercise, in which the different idioms are introduced, so that they may be impressed upon the memory, and the pupil may learn to write Latin in the style of Nepos.

The *Æneid* of Virgil, with English Notes. 12mo. 6s.

A First Verse Book, Part I.; intended as an easy Introduction to the Latin Hexameter and Pentameter. Eleventh Edition. 12mo. 2s. Part II.; containing additional Exercises. Third Edition. 12mo. 1s.

This is both a Verse Book and also a short but complete Prosody. Each Exercise is preceded by a lesson containing rules and verses to be imitated. The great advantage of the book is that the verses are *not nonsense*, but have been carefully selected, so that they can be construed by the pupil, who thus learns from the first to avoid mixing the words of different sentences.

A Practical Introduction to Latin Verse Composition. Fourth Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Cicero, with English Notes. 12mo.

Select Orations. Third Edition. 4s.

The Tusculan Disputations. Second Edition. 5s. 6d.

Cato Major, sive De Senectute Dialogus. 2s. 6d.

The object of this Series is to give the pupil *sufficient* help, but *not too much*: the notes, which are mostly taken from the best German editions, render assistance in all the really difficult passages, and give such explanations of ancient laws and customs as may enable the pupil to understand the allusions of the author.

Longer Latin Exercises, Part I. Third Edition. 8vo. 4s.

Longer Latin Exercises, Part II.; containing a Selection of Passages of greater length, in genuine idiomatic English for Translation into Latin. 8vo. 4s.

A Copious and Critical English-Latin Lexicon, by the Rev. T. K. Arnold and the Rev. J. E. Riddle. New Edition. 8vo. 17. 1s.

The object of this Work is to give the student an English-Latin Lexicon of such strict accuracy that he can consult it with a reasonable hope of finding what he wants, and with the certainty of being able to trust what he finds. An account is given of the use of the words set down, of their synonymical distinctions, and of the niceties connected with their employment by Classical Writers, together with many useful remarks and cautions.

An Abridgment of the above Work, for the use of Schools. By the Rev. J. C. Ebdon, late Fellow and Tutor of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

GREEK.

The First Greek Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s.

This is at once an easy Grammar, Construing, and Exercise Book: each lesson is followed by a Vocabulary and Exercises for translation into English and Greek; the rules for accentuation are gradually introduced into the lessons, so that the pupil is accustomed from the very beginning to write Greek

words with their proper accents. About fifty pages of paradigms of declensions and conjugations (regular and irregular) are given, portions of which are to be learnt with each lesson. Syntactical rules and differences of idiom give what further assistance is required.

The Second Greek Book (on the same Plan); containing an Elementary Treatise on the Greek Particles and the Formation of Greek Derivatives. 12mo. 5s. 6d.

The Third Greek Book, containing Selections from Xenophon's Cyropædia, with English Notes, and a Vocabulary. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

The Fourth Greek Book, containing Xenophon's Anabasis, Books IV. to VII., with English Notes. 12mo. 4s.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence. With Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. Ninth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

In each lesson of this book a portion of the Accidence is learnt and impressed upon the memory by an exercise containing numerous examples on the declensions, conjugations, and simple government of words, with which the pupil becomes familiar by *constant repetition*. In the second part, exercises

are given on the verbs in $\mu\epsilon$, the contracted and irregular verbs, and on the principles of word-building; this part is preceded by a short treatise on accentuation, and the pupil is required to accentuate his Greek. The questions on the Accidence and Accentuation will be found very useful to the tutor.

A Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition. Twelfth Edition. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

The Syntax is broken up into short lessons, each followed by a Vocabulary and Exercise, and preceded by Model Sentences in Greek, containing examples of the rules, whilst each exercise contains many examples of the back rules, so that by imitation and very frequent repetition they may

be thoroughly impressed upon the mind. The pupil thus gradually learns the niceties of the language, whilst one object is steadily kept in view, that of making the *general construction of sentences* of more importance than the *mere government of cases*.

Syntax of the Greek Language, especially of the Attic Dialect, for the use of Schools. By Dr. J. N. Madvig, Professor in the University of Copenhagen. Translated from the German by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. Together with an Appendix on the Greek Particles by the Translator. Second Edition. Imp. 16mo. 8s. 6d.

Homer for Beginners.—The First Three Books of the Iliad, with English Notes. Fourth Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

<p>The object of this Work is to render such assistance as will be required by the beginner. With this view the notes given in the "Critical Introduction to Homer" are simplified, and many explanations added, which would</p>	<p>not be required by the more advanced student. Lists of words with the Digamma, of peculiar Homeric substantives and adjectives, and of Homeric adverbs and adverbial phrases, with explanations and derivations are added.</p>
--	---

The Iliad of Homer Complete, with English Notes and Grammatical References. Fifth Edition. 12mo, *half-bound*. 12s.

The argument of each book is broken into short parts, which are inserted in the text before each paragraph, in order to give the student an idea of what follows. The notes to the first four books are abridged from Mr. Arnold's other editions of Homer, the rest are from

Dübner. Lists of the Homeric substantives with peculiarities of form, of the adjectives with two forms, of the Homeric adverbs and adverbial phrases, and explanations of Homeric words by Buttman, are given in the form of appendices.

Homer.—The Iliad, Books I. to IV.; with a Critical Introduction, and copious English Notes. Second Edition. 12mo. 7s. 6d.

Homer.—A Complete Greek and English Lexicon for the Poems of Homer and the Homeridæ. Translated from the German of Crusius, by Professor Smith. New Edition. 12mo, *half-bound*. 9s.

The object of this Work is to present in a moderate compass all that is required by the student for understanding Homer and the Homeridæ. It not only contains an alphabetical series of words, with their meanings and derivations, but particularly notices

peculiarities of expression, and those passages which in point of construction or the signification of words are difficult to be understood, or admit of different interpretations: explanations are also given, wherever necessary, from Mythology, Geography, Antiquities, &c.

Xenophon's Anabasis, explained by Dr. F. K. Hertlein. In Two Parts (Part II. forming the "Fourth Greek Book"). Translated from the German, with additional Notes and Grammatical References, by the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 12mo. 6s. 6d.

Herodotus.—Eclogæ Herodotææ; from the Text of Schweighæuser. With English Notes. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

Thucydides, with copious English Notes and Grammatical References. 12mo. Book the First. 5s. 6d. Book the Second. 4s. 6d.

Æschines.—Speech against Ctesiphon. 12mo. 4s.

Demosthenes, with English Notes. 12mo.

The Olynthiac Orations. Third Edition. 3s.

The Oration on the Crown. Second Edition. 4s. 6d.

The Philippic Orations. Third Edition. 4s.

In this Edition the introduction to each Oration supplies enough of the history of the period, and the position of political parties, for understanding its object. The notes are concise, and render all the assistance required for understanding the style and construc-

tions peculiar to the Author; the Attic law-terms, customs and manners, words of peculiar meaning, historical and geographical allusions are fully explained. A chronological table is added of the events which occurred during the life of Demosthenes.

Sophocles, with English Notes, from Schneidewin. By the Ven. Archdeacon Paul, and the Rev. Henry Browne, M.A. 12mo.

The Ajax. 3s.—The Philoctetes. 3s.—The Œdipus Tyrannus. 4s.—The Œdipus Coloneus. 4s.—The Antigone. 4s.

This Edition is especially adapted for schools, though it is hoped that even the finished scholar may glean from it some useful information. The notes are concise, on the principle of not giving *too much help*, yet all real difficulties of construction or expression are carefully explained, as well as any allusions to History and Mythology.

The Introduction gives a complete history of the principal actors, and explains the different scenes and plot of each play, whilst its object and the date of its production are thoroughly discussed: the character of the actors is also compared with that given by other poets.

Euripides, with English Notes. 12mo.

The Hecuba.—The Hippolytus.—The Bacchæ.—The Medea.—The Iphigenia in Tauris. 3s. each.

The object of this Edition is to furnish sufficient help to young scholars reading Euripides for the first time, without going too deeply into nice points of criticism; in any difficulties of construction, unusual meanings of words, allusions to History, Mythology,

Geography, &c., assistance is given in the notes. An introduction is prefixed to each play, explaining the plot, characters, scenes, &c., and giving much information on points of classical interest in connexion with the play.

Aristophanes, with English Notes, by Professor Felton. 12mo.

The Clouds. 3s. 6d.

* * * *In this Edition the objectionable passages are omitted.*

A .Copious Phraseological English-Greek Lexicon, founded on a Work prepared by J. W. Frädersdorff, Ph. Dr. of the Taylor-Institution, Oxford. Revised, Enlarged, and Improved by Henry Browne, M.A., Vicar of Pevensey, and Prebendary of Chichester. Fourth Edition. 8vo. 21s.

In this Lexicon it has been endeavoured to give the equivalent Greek for all English words, with their various meanings. The grammatical construction is duly indicated, poetry discriminated from prose, synonyms distinguished, and the usage and idioms of both languages exemplified by copious phrases from named authors. It claims to be a *Lexicon* in the proper sense of the word, such that a foreigner

being a good Greek scholar, could acquire from it a knowledge of English almost as complete (except for what is essentially *modern*) as would be furnished by a good English dictionary in his own language; in which, therefore, the English student may expect to find the right words and the suitable mode of expression for the thought which he wishes to render into Greek.

Classical Examination Papers. A Series of 93 Extracts from Greek, Roman, and English Classics for Translation, with occasional Questions and Notes; each extract on a separate leaf. Price of the whole in a specimen packet, 4s., or six copies of any Separate Paper may be had for 3d.

Keys to the following may be had by Tutors only:—

First Latin Book, 1s. Supplementary Exercises, 1s. 6d.

Second Latin Book, 2s. First Verse Book, 1s.

Latin Verse Composition, 2s.

Latin Prose Composition, Part I., 1s. 6d.

Longer Latin Exercises, Part I., 1s. 6d. Part II., 2s. 6d.

Grotefend's Materials for Latin Translation, 4s.

Greek Prose Composition, 1s. 6d. First Greek Book, 1s. 6d.

HEBREW.

The First Hebrew Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." Fifth Edition. 12mo. 7s. 6d. Key, 3s. 6d.

The Second Hebrew Book, containing the Book of Genesis; together with a Hebrew Syntax, and a Vocabulary and Grammatical Commentary. 12mo. 9s.

GERMAN.

The First German Book; on the Plan of "Henry's First Latin Book." By the Rev. T. K. Arnold and Dr. Frädersdorff. Eighth Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

This Work (on the same plan as Henry's First Latin Book) is at once a Grammar, Exercise, and Construing Book: the pupil is led by easy steps

to gain a fair knowledge of the idioms of the language, and acquires an extensive Vocabulary.

The Second German Book ; a Syntax, and Etymological Vocabulary, with copious Reading-Lessons and Exercises.
 Edited by Dr. Frädersdorff. 12mo. 6s. 6d. Key, 1s.

FRENCH.

The First French Book ; on the Plan of " Henry's First Latin Book." Sixth Edition. 12mo. 5s. 6d. Key, 2s. 6d.

ENGLISH

Spelling turned Etymology. Third Edition. 12mo. 2s. 6d. The Pupil's Book. 1s. 3d.
Latin viâ English ; being the Second Part of the above Work. Fourth Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.
An English Grammar for Classical Schools ; being a Practical Introduction to "English Prose Composition."
 Tenth Edition. 12mo. 4s. 6d.

Handbooks for the Classical Student, with Questions.

Ancient History and Geography. From the German of Pütz. Translated by the Ven. Archdeacon Paul. Second Edition. 12mo. 6s. 6d.
Mediæval History and Geography. By the Same. 4s. 6d.
Modern History and Geography. By the Same. 5s. 6d.
Grecian Antiquities. From the Swedish of Bojesen. Translated from Dr. Hoffa's German version by the Ven. Archdeacon Paul. Second Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.
Roman Antiquities. By the Same. Second Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.
Latin Synonymes. From the German of Döderlein. Third Edition. 12mo. 4s.
Greek Synonymes. From the French of Pillon. 12mo. 6s. 6d.

Messrs. Rivington's Complete Educational Catalogue may be had Gratis and Post-free on application.

RIVINGTONS

WATERLOO PLACE, LONDON

Oxford and Cambridge

12

